L4 eXperimental Kernel Reference Manual

Version X.2

System Architecture Group Dept. of Computer Science Karlsruhe Institute of Technology (L4Ka Team) info@14ka.org

Document Revision 7-6288f0536ce1 October 13, 2011



Contents

Al	ut This Manual	,
	ntroductory Remarks	
	Understanding This Document	
	Notation	
	Revision History	
	CONSIGNITINSTRUMENT OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PRO	17
1	Basic Kernel Interface	1
	1.1 Kernel Interface Page	. 2
	1.2 KernelInterface	
	1.3 Virtual Registers	. 11
_		
2	Threads	13
	2.1 ThreadId	
	2.2 Thread Control Registers (TCRs)	
	2.3 EXCHANGEREGISTERS	
	2.4 ThreadControl	. 23
3	Scheduling	27
J	3.1 Clock	
	3.2 SystemClock	
	3.3 Time	
	3.4 ThreadSwitch	
	3.5 Schedule	
	8.6 Preempt Flags	. 37
4	Address Spaces and Mapping	39
	4.1 Fpage	
	4.2 UNMAP	
	4.3 SpaceControl	. 4:
5	PC	49
J	5.1 Messages And Message Registers (MRs)	
	5.2 MapItem	. 54
	5.3 GrantItem	
	5.4 CtrlXferItem	
	5.5 StringItem	
	5.6 String Buffers And Buffer Registers (BRs)	. 62
	5.7 IPC	
6	Miscellaneous	71
	5.1 ExceptionHandler	
	5.2 Cop Flags	
	5.3 PROCESSORCONTROL	
	5.4 MemoryControl	. /(
7	Protocols	79
•	7.1 Thread Start Protocol	. 80
	7.2 Interrupt Protocol	. 81
	7.3 Pagefault Protocol	. 82
	7.4 Preemption Protocol	
	7.5 Exception Protocol	
	7.6 Extended Control Transfer Protocol	
	7.7 Sigma() RPC protocol	QΩ

iv CONTENTS

	7.8	Generic Booting	92
A	IA-	32 Interface	95
	A.1	Virtual Registers	96
	A.2	Systemcalls	99
	A.3	Kernel Features	102
	A.4	IO Ports	103
		Space Control	
		Cacheability Hints	
		Memory Attributes	
		Exception Message Format	
		IA-32 Control Transfer Items	
		Processor Mirroring	
		Booting	
		2 Support for Hardware-assisted Virtualization	
	A.I	B MSR-Fpage	118
		DOLL A	
В		D64 Interface	121
	B.1	Virtual Registers	122
	B.2	Systemcalls	125
	B.3	IO Ports	130
		Cacheability Hints	
	B.5	Memory Attributes	132
		Exception Message Format	
		Processor Mirroring	
		Booting	
	2.0	200	100
C	Pov	rerPC Interface	137
C			
C	C.1	Virtual Registers	138
С	C.1 C.2	Virtual Registers	138 140
С	C.1 C.2 C.3	Virtual Registers	138 140 144
С	C.1 C.2 C.3 C.4	Virtual Registers Systemcalls Memory Attributes Space Control	138 140 144 145
С	C.1 C.2 C.3 C.4 C.5	Virtual Registers Systemcalls Memory Attributes Space Control Exception Message Format	138 140 144 145 146
С	C.1 C.2 C.3 C.4 C.5 C.6	Virtual Registers Systemcalls Memory Attributes Space Control Exception Message Format Processor Mirroring	138 140 144 145 146 148
C	C.1 C.2 C.3 C.4 C.5 C.6 C.7	Virtual Registers Systemcalls Memory Attributes Space Control Exception Message Format Processor Mirroring Booting	138 140 144 145 146 148 149
C	C.1 C.2 C.3 C.4 C.5 C.6 C.7	Virtual Registers Systemcalls Memory Attributes Space Control Exception Message Format Processor Mirroring	138 140 144 145 146 148 149
	C.1 C.2 C.3 C.4 C.5 C.6 C.7 C.8	Virtual Registers Systemcalls Memory Attributes Space Control Exception Message Format Processor Mirroring Booting Support for Hardware-accelerated Virtualization	138 140 144 145 146 148 149 150
	C.1 C.2 C.3 C.4 C.5 C.6 C.7 C.8	Virtual Registers Systemcalls Memory Attributes Space Control Exception Message Format Processor Mirroring Booting Support for Hardware-accelerated Virtualization rerPC64 Interface	138 140 144 145 146 148 149 150
	C.1 C.2 C.3 C.4 C.5 C.6 C.7 C.8 Pow D.1	Virtual Registers Systemcalls Memory Attributes Space Control Exception Message Format Processor Mirroring Booting Support for Hardware-accelerated Virtualization PerPC64 Interface Virtual Registers	138 140 144 145 146 148 149 150 155
	C.1 C.2 C.3 C.4 C.5 C.6 C.7 C.8 Pow D.1 D.2	Virtual Registers Systemcalls Memory Attributes Space Control Exception Message Format Processor Mirroring Booting Support for Hardware-accelerated Virtualization PerPC64 Interface Virtual Registers Systemcalls	138 140 144 145 146 148 149 150 155 156 158
	C.1 C.2 C.3 C.4 C.5 C.6 C.7 C.8 Pow D.1 D.2	Virtual Registers Systemcalls Memory Attributes Space Control Exception Message Format Processor Mirroring Booting Support for Hardware-accelerated Virtualization PerPC64 Interface Virtual Registers	138 140 144 145 146 148 149 150 155 156 158
	C.1 C.2 C.3 C.4 C.5 C.6 C.7 C.8 Pow D.1 D.2 D.3 D.4	Virtual Registers Systemcalls Memory Attributes Space Control Exception Message Format Processor Mirroring Booting Support for Hardware-accelerated Virtualization PEPC64 Interface Virtual Registers Systemcalls Memory Attributes Exception Message Format	138 140 144 145 146 148 149 150 155 156 158 163
	C.1 C.2 C.3 C.4 C.5 C.6 C.7 C.8 Pow D.1 D.2 D.3 D.4	Virtual Registers Systemcalls Memory Attributes Space Control Exception Message Format Processor Mirroring Booting Support for Hardware-accelerated Virtualization PerPC64 Interface Virtual Registers Systemcalls Memory Attributes	138 140 144 145 146 148 149 150 155 156 158 163
	C.1 C.2 C.3 C.4 C.5 C.6 C.7 C.8 Pow D.1 D.2 D.3 D.4	Virtual Registers Systemcalls Memory Attributes Space Control Exception Message Format Processor Mirroring Booting Support for Hardware-accelerated Virtualization PEPC64 Interface Virtual Registers Systemcalls Memory Attributes Exception Message Format	138 140 144 145 146 148 149 150 155 156 158 163
D	C.1 C.2 C.3 C.4 C.5 C.6 C.7 C.8 Pow D.1 D.2 D.3 D.4 D.5	Virtual Registers Systemcalls Memory Attributes Space Control Exception Message Format Processor Mirroring Booting Support for Hardware-accelerated Virtualization PEPC64 Interface Virtual Registers Systemcalls Memory Attributes Exception Message Format	138 140 144 145 146 148 149 150 155 156 158 163
D	C.1 C.2 C.3 C.4 C.5 C.6 C.7 C.8 Pow D.1 D.2 D.3 D.4 D.5	Virtual Registers Systemcalls Memory Attributes Space Control Exception Message Format Processor Mirroring Booting Support for Hardware-accelerated Virtualization PerPC64 Interface Virtual Registers Systemcalls Memory Attributes Exception Message Format Booting Booting Exception Message Format Booting	138 140 144 145 146 148 149 150 155 156 158 163 164 166
D	C.1 C.2 C.3 C.4 C.5 C.6 C.7 C.8 Pow D.1 D.2 D.3 D.4 D.5 Ger E.1	Virtual Registers Systemcalls Memory Attributes Space Control Exception Message Format Processor Mirroring Booting Support for Hardware-accelerated Virtualization PEPC64 Interface Virtual Registers Systemcalls Memory Attributes Exception Message Format Booting Exception Message Format Booting Peric BootInfo	138 140 144 145 146 148 149 150 155 156 163 164 166 167
D	C.1 C.2 C.3 C.4 C.5 C.6 C.7 C.8 Pow D.1 D.2 D.3 D.4 D.5 Ger E.1	Virtual Registers Systemcalls Memory Attributes Space Control Exception Message Format Processor Mirroring Booting Support for Hardware-accelerated Virtualization PEPC64 Interface Virtual Registers Systemcalls Memory Attributes Exception Message Format Booting Peric BootInfo Generic BootInfo	138 140 144 145 146 148 149 150 155 156 163 164 166 167
D E	C.1 C.2 C.3 C.4 C.5 C.6 C.7 C.8 Pow D.1 D.2 D.3 D.4 D.5 Ger E.1 E.2	Virtual Registers Systemcalls Memory Attributes Space Control Exception Message Format Processor Mirroring Booting Support for Hardware-accelerated Virtualization rerPC64 Interface Virtual Registers Systemcalls Memory Attributes Exception Message Format Booting eric BootInfo Generic BootInfo Generic BootInfo BootInfo Records elopment Remarks	138 140 144 145 146 148 149 150 155 156 158 163 164 166 167 168 170
D E	C.1 C.2 C.3 C.4 C.5 C.6 C.7 C.8 Pow D.1 D.2 D.3 D.4 D.5 Ger E.1 E.2	Virtual Registers Systemcalls Memory Attributes Space Control Exception Message Format Processor Mirroring Booting Support for Hardware-accelerated Virtualization rerPC64 Interface Virtual Registers Systemcalls Memory Attributes Exception Message Format Booting eric BootInfo Generic BootInfo Generic BootInfo BootInfo Records elopment Remarks	138 140 144 145 146 148 149 150 155 156 158 163 164 166 167 168 170
D E	C.1 C.2 C.3 C.4 C.5 C.6 C.7 C.8 Pow D.1 D.2 D.3 D.4 D.5 Ger E.1 E.2	Virtual Registers Systemcalls Memory Attributes Space Control Exception Message Format Processor Mirroring Booting Support for Hardware-accelerated Virtualization rerPC64 Interface Virtual Registers Systemcalls Memory Attributes Exception Message Format Booting Exception Message Format Booting reric BootInfo Generic BootInfo BootInfo Records	138 140 144 145 146 148 149 150 155 156 158 163 164 166 167 168 170
D E	C.1 C.2 C.3 C.4 C.5 C.6 C.7 C.8 Pow D.1 D.2 D.3 D.4 D.5 Gen E.1 E.2 Poy	Virtual Registers Systemcalls Memory Attributes Space Control Exception Message Format Processor Mirroring Booting Support for Hardware-accelerated Virtualization **rerPC64 Interface** Virtual Registers Systemcalls Memory Attributes Exception Message Format Booting **eric BootInfo** Generic BootInfo* Generic BootInfo* BootInfo Records **elopment Remarks* Exception Handling	138 140 144 145 146 148 149 150 155 156 158 163 164 166 167 168 170
D E	C.1 C.2 C.3 C.4 C.5 C.6 C.7 C.8 Pow D.1 D.2 D.3 D.4 D.5 Gen E.1 E.2 Poy	Virtual Registers Systemcalls Memory Attributes Space Control Exception Message Format Processor Mirroring Booting Support for Hardware-accelerated Virtualization rerPC64 Interface Virtual Registers Systemcalls Memory Attributes Exception Message Format Booting eric BootInfo Generic BootInfo Generic BootInfo BootInfo Records elopment Remarks	138 140 144 145 146 148 149 150 155 158 163 164 166 167 168 170

About This Manual

Introductory Remarks

Purpose of This Document

This L4 Reference Manual serves as defining document for all L4 APIs and ABIs. Primarily, it addresses L4 microkernel implementors as API/ABI suppliers and code-generator or library implementors as API/ABI users. The reference manual assumes intimate knowledge of basic L4 concepts and hardware architecture. Its key point is precise definition, not explanation and illustration. The

L4 System Programmer's Manual

is intended to support programmers using L4. It explains and illustrates fundamental concepts and describes in more detail how (and why) to use which function, etc.

Maintainers

The document is maintained by the following members of the L4Ka Team:

- Uwe Dannowski (ud3@ira.uka.de)
- Joshua LeVasseur (jtl@ira.uka.de)
- Espen Skoglund (esk@ira.uka.de)
- Volkmar Uhlig (volkmar@ira.uka.de)
- Jan Stoess (stoess@ira.uka.de)

Credits

This manual is based on a final draft by **Jochen Liedtke**. It reflects his outstanding work on the L4 microkernel and systems research in general. Only his vision of system design made this work possible. Jochen defined the state of the art of microkernel design for nearly a decade. We thank him for his support and try to continue the work in his spirit.

Helpful contributions for improving this reference manual and the L4 interface came from many persons, in particular from Alan Au, Marcus Brinkmann, Philip Derrin, Kevin Elphinstone, Bryan Ford, Andreas Haeberlen, Hermann Härtig, Gernot Heiser, Michael Hohmuth, Trent Jaeger, Ben Leslie, Jork Löser, Frank Mehnert, Yoonho Park, Marc Salem, Carl van Schaik, Sebastian Schönberg, Cristan Szmajda, Harvey Tuch, Marcus Völp, Neal Walfield, Adam Wiggins, Simon Winwood, and Jean Wolter.

vi ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Document History

draft by Jochen Liedtke ??/?? - 06/01 review by L4Ka Team 06/01 - 09/01 Q4/01 L4 developers review release 01/02

Understanding This Document

This L4 Reference Manual defines the generic API for all 32-bit and 64-bit machines. As such, the generic reference manual is independent of specific processor architectures. It is complemented by processor-specific ABI specifications. Some of them can be found in the appendix of this document.

In this document, we differentiate between Logical Interface, Generic Binary Interface, Generic Programming Interface, Convenience Programming Interface and Processor-specific Binary Interface.

Logical Interface The logical interface defines all concepts and logical objects such as system-call operations, logical data objects, data types and their semantics. Altogether, they form the logical L4 API.

Generic Binary Interface

Binary representations of most data types and generic data objects are defined independently of specific processors (although there are two different versions, one for 32-bit and a second one for 64-bit processors). Both versions together form the generic binary interface of L4.

From a purist point of view, logical interface plus generic binary interface could be regarded as a complete specification of the hardware-independent L4 microkernel interface. However, for ease-of-use and standardization reasons, the mentioned two fundamental interfaces are complemented by two more interface classes:

Generic Programming Interface

The generic programming interface defines the objects of the logical interface and the generic binary interface as pseudo C++ classes. The language binding for regular C is for the most part identical to C++. For the cases where the C language causes function naming conflicts, the C version of the function name is given in brackets.

For the time being, only the C and C++ versions of the API are specified. The concrete syntax of other language interfaces will be left open. Later on, all language bindings will be included in the generic programming interface.

Convenience Programming Interface

This interface is not part of the L4 microkernel specification in the strict sense. All of its data types and procedures can be implemented using the generic programming interface. Strictly speaking, it is an interface on top of the microkernel that makes the most common operations more easily usable for the programmer.

It is important to understand that convenience and ease-of-use, not completeness, is the criterion for this interface. The convenience programming interface supports programmers by offering operations that together cover about 95% of the required microkernel functionality. For the remaining 5%, the programmer has to use the basic (not so convenient) operations of the generic programming interface.

Obviously, the convenience programming interface is not mandatory. Consequently, from a minimalist point of view, there is no need to include it in the generic L4 specification.

Nevertheless, for reasons of standardization and thus portability of software, every complete L4 language binding has to include the entire convenience programming interface.

Implementation remark: Although the convenience interface can be completely implemented on top of the generic programming interface, i.e., processor independently, the implementor of the convenience interface may implement it hardware-dependently and thus incorporate any optimization that becomes possible through a specific processor-specific binary interface.

The last interface class is not part of the generic L4 API specification.

ABOUT THIS MANUAL vii

Processor-specific Binary Interface

Defines the processor-specific binary interface.

Notation

Basic Data Types

This reference manual describes the L4 API and ABI for both 32-bit and 64-bit processors. The data type Word denotes a 32-bit unsigned integer on a 32-bit processor and a 64-bit unsigned integer on a 64-bit processor. Word64, Word32, and Word16 denote 64, 32, and 16-bit words independent of the processor type.

Privileged Threads

Some system calls can only be executed by privileged threads. Any thread belonging to the same address space as one of the initial threads created by the kernel upon boot-time (see page 92) are treated as privileged.

Bit Fields

Bit-field lengths are denoted as subscripts (i/j) where i relates to a 32-bit processor and j to a 64-bit processor. Bit-field subscripts (i) specify bit fields that have the same size for both 32-bit and 64-bit processors. Byte offsets are given as $\pm i/\pm j$ for 32-bit and 64-bit processors. If all bit-fields of a specified word only add up to 32 bits, the remaining upper 32 bits on 64-bit processors are *undefined* or *ignored*.

Undefined, Ignored, and Unchanged

~	Output parameters or bit fields can be <i>undefined</i> . Corresponding parameters or fields are denoted by \sim . They have no defined value on output, i.e., they may have any value or may even be inaccessible. Any algorithm relying on the value of undefined parameters or bit fields is defined to be incorrect. + No covert channel.
_	Input parameters or bit fields can be specified as <i>ignored</i> , denoted by –. Such parameters or fields can hold any value without affecting the invoked service. – is also used to define bit fields that are available for additional information. For example, fpage denotations contain some ignored bits that are used for access control bits in some system calls.
	In processor-specific interfaces, registers are sometimes defined to be unchanged. This is denoted by \equiv .

Upward Compatibility

The following holds for future API versions and sub-versions that are specified as *upward-compatible* to the current version.

Output parameters and bit fields.

Fields currently defined as undefined (\sim) may be specified as defined. Such newly defined fields will only deliver additional information. They can be ignored if the system call is used exactly like specified in the current API.

viii ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Input parameters and bit fields.

Fields currently defined as ignored (–) may be specified as defined. However, the content of such fields will be only relevant for newly defined features. Such fields will be ignored if a system call is used with the "old" semantics specified in this API.

Using the API

Naming

A programmer can use all function, type, and constant definitions defined in the generic and convenience programming interfaces throughout this manual. All definitions must, however, be prefixed with the string "L4_" and type names must contain the "_t" suffix (e.g., use "L4_Ipc()" and "L4_MsgTag_t" rather than "Ipc()" and "MsgTag_"). The interfaces are currently only defined for C++ and C. In some cases the naming used for function names causes conflicts in the C language. These conflicts must be resolved using the alternative name specified in brackets after the function definition.

Include Files

The relevant include files containing the required definitions and declarations are specified in the beginning of the generic and convenience interface sections. In general there is one include file for each chapter in the manual. If only the basic L4 data types are needed they can be included using <14/types.h>.

ABOUT THIS MANUAL ix

Revision History

Revision 1

Initial revision.

- Clarified the specification of the kernel-interface page and kernel configuration page magic.
- UntypedWords and StringItems Acceptor constants collided with function UntypedWords(MsgTag) and StringItems(MsgTag) function declaration. Renamed to UntypedWordsAcceptor and StringItemsAcceptor.
- Changed kernel ids for L4Ka kernels.
- Fixed return types for operators on the Time type.
- Changed wrx access rights in fpages to rwx. Also changed WRX reference bits in fpages returned from UNMAP system call to RWX.
- Renamed Put functions operating on MsgBuffer to Append.
- Address space deletion is now performed by deleting the last thread of an AS. This makes creation and deletion symmetrical (via ThreadControl). Before, all threads but the last were deleted by ThreadControl, and the last by SpaceControl.
- Added functions for creating ThreadIDs and for retrieving version and thread numbers from them. Fixed size of MyLocalId and MyGlobalId TCRs.
- Specified that the first three thread version numbers available for user threads are dedicated to σ_0 , σ_1 , and root task respectively.
- Changed the encoding of μ in the magic field of the KIP back to 0xE6 to be compatible with previous versions of the kernel
- Changed memory descriptors (e.g., dedicated memory) in the kernel-interface page and kernel configuration page to
 use an array of typed descriptors instead of a static number of predefined ones.
- Added an appendix for the PowerPC interface.
- Added Niltag MsgTag constant.
- Decreased size of MsgBuffer structure to 32.
- Changed single Fpage& argument of Unmap() and Flush() into pass by value.
- Changed the ia32 kernel feature string "small" to "smallspaces".
- Added appendix for the ia64 interface.
- Changed the ia32 IPC and LIPC ABI to be better suitable for common hardware featuring sysenter/sysexit and gcc.
- Added ProcDesc convenience functions.
- Specified which include files to use for the various parts of the API.
- Allow privileged threads to access ia 32 Model-Specific Registers.
- Changed the ia64 ABI for system-call links and the IPC and LIPC system-calls.
- The UTCB location of a new thread is now explicitly specified by a parameter to the THREADCONTROL system-call.
- Added C versions of conflicting function names.

x ABOUT THIS MANUAL

 Added a number of convenience functions for fpages, map items, grant items, string items and kernel interface page fields.

- Added description of the send base in map and grant items.
- Changed subversion numbering for Version X.2 and Version 4 API.
- Renamed the XferTimeout TCR to XferTimeouts and split into separate send and receive timeouts.
- Added two thread specific words to each the architecture specific TCR sections. These words are free to be used by, e.g., IDL compilers.
- Changed name of L4Ka kernels to the official name. Added L4Ka::Strawberry.
- Added appendices for Alpha and MIPS64.

Revision 3

- Clarified description of the *supplier* field in the kernel-interface page.
- Added NumMemoryDescriptors() convenience function.
- Clarified the return value of MemoryDescType() function.
- Fixed faulty specification of Wait_Timeout() and ReplyWait_Timeout().
- Added a new h-flag to control parameter in the EXCHANGEREGISTERS system-call. The h-flag controls whether the resume/halt flag should be ignored or not.
- Changed parameter type of TimePeriod() from "int" to "Word64".
- Fixed typo in specification of the MsgTag input/output IPC parameter.
- Added comment to IPC system-call about the read-once semantics of message registers.
- Added member name "raw" to all L4 types declared as structs.
- Renamed start() and stop() functions to Start() and Stop().
- Describe semantics of undefined UTCB memory regions.
- The first 10 message registers on PowerPC are now defined as backed by physical registers.
- The first 9 message registers on Alpha are now defined as backed by physical registers.
- Fixed MR₀ register allocation for IA32 syscalls and adapted syscalls accordingly.

- Added appendix for AMD64.
- Changed MIPS64 IPC ABI to include 9 message registers.
- Added SYSTEMCLOCK syscall for MIPS64.
- Clarified the fact that an interrupt thread may be the originator thread during IPC propagation.
- Added appendix for SPARC v9.
- The *high* field of memory descriptors now specifies the last addressable byte in the memory region.

ABOUT THIS MANUAL xi

Revision 5

- The ErrorCode TCR is now a generic placeholder for error descriptions of failed system-calls.
- MEMORYCONTROL now returns a result parameter.
- Defined error codes for various system-calls (EXCHANGEREGISTERS, THREADCONTROL, SCHEDULE, SPACECONTROL, PROCESSORCONTROL and MEMORYCONTROL).
- Defined convenience definitons for error code values.
- Changed the IA32 SYSTEMCLOCK ABI to clobber the EDI register.
- Specify that the KIP area and the UTCB area of an address space must not overlap.
- For the PowerPC system call trap exception IPC, use a message label of -5, and preserve register LR.
- The EXCHANGEREGISTERS system-call can no longer activate an inactive thread.
- The Fpage argument to Set_Rights() is now passed by reference.
- Fixed inconsistencies about the number of available buffer registers.
- Renamed Void to void, Char to char, and bool to Bool.
- The Start() convenience function now aborts any ongoing IPC operations.
- The Unmap() and Flush() convenience functions operating on a single fpage now deliver the status bits of the modified fpage.
- MIPS64 now uses the k0 (\$26) register for holding the UTCB address.
- Added two new memory types for MEMORYCONTROL on MIPS64.
- Added appendix for generic BootInfo.
- Make it clear that it is not possible to activate a thread in an address space which has not been properly configured with SPACECONTROL.
- Added appendix for ARM.
- If using a 64 bit kernel, define second 32 bit word of kernel interface page to 0.
- Changed the ABI for the PowerPC system calls UNMAP and MEMORYCONTROL .

- Removed control parameter from PROCESSORCONTROL system call binding and from the PROCESSORCONTROL Alpha system call ABI.
- Added delivery parameter to EXCHANGEREGISTERS controlling whether the syscall should deliver the thread's old values or not. Targeted at MP systems.
- Added operators for adding and subtracting two Clock values.
- Specified that σ_0 also understands the pagefault protocol, and that anonymous σ_0 requests will only regard conventional memory as available.
- Added ARM general exception IPC message format.
- Changes MIPS64 syscall exception IPC message format to closer match the general exception message format.
- Clarified order of IPC send and receive.
- Changed the AMD64 and IA32 specific IO port mapping interface. The kernel now uses a custom pagefault label to propagate IO pagefaults to the pager.
- Updated valid encodings for API Version, Kernel Id, and Supplier in the kernel-interface page.
- Make it clear on which processor a new thread starts executing.

xii ABOUT THIS MANUAL

- ProcessorNo now returns a word rather than int.
- Added functions for reading IO fpages. Fixed include path for using IO fpages.
- Define that the SCHEDULE system call is also allowed if the calling thread resides in same address space as the destination thread.

 Redefine values for IA32 memory attributes to better correspond with the architecture's default Page Attribute Table (PAT) values.

- Removed discontinued architectures IA-64, ARM, Alpha, MIPS, MIPS64, SPARC
- Introduced a new item called control transfer item (CtrlXferItem), which allows specifying control state for IPC and EXCHANGEREGISTERS system-calls in an architecture-dependent manner.
- Added three new flags W,R, and C to the control parameter in the EXCHANGEREGISTERS system-call. The new flags allow modifying thread state using CtrlXferItems.
- Added a set of extended protocols for pagefaults, exceptions, and precemptions, which retrieving and updating thread state via CtrlXferItems.
- Added support for hardware-assisted virtualization for IA-32 and PowerPC-32 processors.
- Introduced protocol and a space control extensions for mapping extended physical (64-bit) pages on IA-32 and PowerPC-32
- Fixed wrong specification of SCHEDULE system-call for AMD-64 processors.

Chapter 1

Basic Kernel Interface

1.1 Kernel Interface Page [Data Structure]

2

The kernel-interface page contains API and kernel version data, system descriptors including memory descriptors, and system-call links. The remainder of the page is undefined.

The page is a microkernel object. It is directly mapped through the microkernel into each address space upon address-space creation. It is *not* mapped by a pager, can *not* be mapped or granted to another address space and can *not* be unmapped. The creator of a new address space can specify the address where the kernel interface page has to be mapped. This address will remain constant through the lifetime of that address space. Any thread can obtain the address of the kernel interface page through the KERNELINTERFACE system call (see page 7).

L4 version parts				
Supplier	KernelVer	KernelGenDate	KernelId	KernDescPtı
				1
		InternalFreq	ExternalFreq	ProcDescPtr
		Memor	yDesc	MemDescPtr
			·	J
~	SCHEDULE SC	ThreadSwitch <i>SC</i>	SystemClock SC	+F0 / +1E0
EXCHANGEREGISTERS SC	Unmap <i>SC</i>	Lipc <i>SC</i>	IPC SC	+E0 / +1C0
MEMORYCONTROL pSC	PROCESSORCONTROL pSC	THREADCONTROL pSC	SPACECONTROL pSC	+D0/+1A0
ProcessorInfo	PageInfo	ThreadInfo	ClockInfo	+C0 / +180
ProcDescPtr	BootInfo	~		+B0 / +160
KipAreaInfo	UtcbInfo	^	J	+A0 / +140
~				
~				
~				
		_		+60 / +C0
	<u> </u>	MemoryInfo	~	+50 / +A0
~				
~				
~				+20 / +40
	^			+10 / +20
KernDescPtr	API Flags	API Version	0 _(0/32) 'K' 230 '4' 'L'	+0
+C / +18				

Note that this kernel interface page is basically upward compatible to the *kernel info page* of versions 2 and X.0. The magic byte string "L4 μ K" at the beginning of the object identifies the kernel interface page.

Version/id number convention: Version/subversion/subsubversion numbers and id/subid numbers with the most significant bit 0 denote official versions/ids and are globally unique through all suppliers. Version/id numbers that have the most significant bit set to 1 denote experimental versions/ids and may be unique only in the context of a supplier.

API Description

API Version

version (8)	subversion (8)	~ ₍₁₆₎

ve	rsion	subversion	
0	x02		Version 2
0	x83	0x80	Experimental Version X.0
0	x83	0x81	Experimental Version X.1
0	x84	rev	Experimental Version X.2 (Revision rev)
0	x85		Dresden L4.Sec
0	x86	rev	NICTA N1 (Revision rev)
0	x04	rev	Version 4 (Revision rev)

API Flags



ee = 00 : little endian, = 01 : big endian.

00 20 11 ABI

ww = 00 : 32-bit API, = 01 : 64-bit API.

Note that this field can not be used directly to differentiate between little endian and big endian mode since the ee field resides in different bytes for both modes. Furthermore, the offset address of the API Flags is different for 32-bit and 64-bit modes. In summary, a direct inspection of the kernel interface page is not sufficient to securely differentiate between 32/64-bit modes and little/big endian modes.

Secure mode detection is enabled through the KERNELINTERFACE system call (see page 7). It delivers the API Flags in a register.

System Description

ProcessorInfo

s

$s_{(4)} \sim (12/44)$	processors - 1 (16)

The size of the area occupied by a single processor description is 2^s . Location of description fields for the first processor is denoted by ProcDescPtr. Description fields for subsequent processors are located directly following the previous one.

processors

Number of available system processors.

PageInfo



page-size mask

If bit k-10 of the page-size mask field (bit k of the entire word) is set to 1 hardware and kernel support pages of size 2^k . If the bit is 0 hardware and/or kernel do not support pages of size 2^k . Note that fpages of size 2^k can be used, even if 2^k is no supported hardware page size. Information about supported hardware page sizes is only a performance hint.

rwx

Identifies the supported access rights (read, write, execute) that can be set independently of other access rights. A 1-bit signals that the right can be set and reset on a mapped page. For rwx = 010, only write permission could be controlled orthogonally. The processor would implicitly permit read and execute access on any mapped page. For rwx = 111, all three rights could be set and reset independently.

ThreadInfo

$UserBase_{\ (12)}$	$SystemBase\ _{(12)}$	t (8)
---------------------	-----------------------	-------

Number of valid thread-number bits. The thread number field may be larger but only bits $0 \dots t-1$ are significant for this kernel. Higher bits must all be 0.

UserBase

Lowest thread number available for user threads (see page 14). The first three thread numbers will be used for the initial thread of σ_0 , σ_1 , and root task respectively (see page 92). The version numbers (see page 14) for these initial threads will equal to one.

SystemBase

Lowest thread number used for system threads (see page 14). Thread numbers below this value denote hardware interrupts.

ClockInfo

SchedulePrecision (16)	ReadPrecision (16)
------------------------	--------------------

ReadPrecision

Specifies the minimal time difference $\neq 0$ that can be detected by reading the system clock through the SYSTEMCLOCK system call. Basically, this is the precision of the system clock when reading it.

SchedulePrecision

Specifies the maximal jitter (\pm) for a scheduled thread activation based on a wakeup time (provided that no thread of higher or equal priority is active and timer interrupts are enabled). Precisions are given as time periods (see page 30).

UtcbInfo

~ (10/42)	s (6)	a (6)	m ₍₁₀₎
-----------	-------	-------	-------------------

- The minimal area size for an address space's UTCB area is 2^s . The size of the UTCB area limits the total number of threads k to $2^a mk \le 2^s$.
- m UTCB size multiplier.
- The UTCB location must be aligned to 2^a . The total size required for one UTCB is $2^a m$.

${\it KipAreaInfo}$



s The size of the kernel interface page area is 2^s .

BootInfo

Prior to kernel initialization a boot loader can write an arbitrary value into the BootInfo field of the kernel configuration page (see page 92). Post-initialization code, e.g., a root server can later read the field from the kernel interface page. Its value is neither changed nor interpreted by the kernel. This is a generic method for passing system information across kernel initialization.

Processor Description

ProcDescPtr

Points to an array containing a description for each system processor. The *ProcessorInfo* field contains the dimension of the array. *ProcDescPtr* is given as an address relative to the kernel interface page's base address.

External Freq External Bus frequency in kHz.

InternalFreq

Internal processor frequency in kHz.

Kernel Description

KernDescPtr

Points to a region that contains 4 kernel-version words (see below) followed by a number of 0-terminated plaintext strings. The first plaintext string identifies the current kernel followed by further optional kernel-specific versioning information. The remaining plaintext strings identify architecture dependent kernel features (see Appendix A.3). A zero length string (i.e., a string containing only a 0-character) terminates the list of feature descriptions.

KernelDescPtr is given as an address relative to the kernel interface page's base address.

KernelId

$\sim (16)$

Can be used to identify the microkernel.

id	subid	kernel	supplier
0	1	L4/486	GMD
0	2	L4/Pentium	IBM
0	3	L4/x86	UKa
1	1	L4/Mips	UNSW
2	1	L4/Alpha	TUD, UNSW
3	1	Fiasco	TUD
4	1	L4Ka::Hazelnut	UKa
4	2	L4Ka::Pistachio	UKa, UNSW, NICTA
4	3	L4Ka::Strawberry	UKa
5	1	NICTA::Pistachio-embedded	NICTA

KernelGenDate

\sim (16/48)	year-2000 (7)	month (4)	day ₍₅₎

Kernel generation date.

KernelVer

ver (8)	subver (8)	subsubver (16)

Can be used to identify the microkernel version. Note that this kernel version is not necessarily related to the API version.

Supplier

The four least significant bytes of the supplier field specify a character string identifying the kernel supplier:

"GMD_{_}" "IBM_{_}" **GMD**

IBM Research

"UNSW" University of New South Wales, Sydney

"TUD_" Technische Universität Dresden "UKa_" Universität Karlsruhe (TH) "NICT" National ICT Australia (NICTA)

System-Call Links

pSC

SCLink for normal system call.

> Link for privileged system call, i.e., a system call that can only be performed by a privileged thread.

> The system-call links specify how the application can invoke system-calls for the current microkernel. The interpretation of the system-call links is ABI specific, but will typically be addresses relative to the kernel interface page's base address where kernel provided system-call stubs are located.

Memory Description

MemoryInfo

6

MemDescPtr

Location of first memory descriptor (as an offset relative to the kernel-interface page's base address). Subsequent memory descriptors are located directly following the first one. For memory descriptors that specify overlapping memory regions, later descriptors take precedence over earlier ones.

n Number of memory descriptors.

MemoryDesc

$high/2^{10}$ (22/54)	~ (10)		+4 / +8		
$low/2^{10}$ (22/54)	v	~	t (4)	type (4)	+0

high Address of last byte in memory region. The ten least significant address bits are all hardwired to 1.

low Address of first byte in memory region. The ten least significant address bits are all hardwired to 0.

Indicates whether memory descriptor refers to physical memory (v=0) or virtual memory (v=1).

type Identifies the type of the memory descriptor.

Type	Description
0x0	Undefined
0x1	Conventional memory
0x2	Reserved memory (i.e., reserved by kernel)
0x3	Dedicated memory (i.e., memory not available to user)
0x4	Shared memory (i.e., available to all users)
0xE	Defined by boot loader
0xF	Architecture dependent

t, type = 0xE

The type of the memory descriptor is dependent on the bootloader. The t field specifies the exact semantics. Refer to boot loader specification for more info.

t, type = 0xF

The type of the memory descriptor is architecture dependent. The t field specifies the exact semantics. Refer to architecture specific part for more info (see page $\ref{eq:total_property}$).

$t, \ type \neq 0xE, \ type \neq 0xF$

The type of the memory descriptor is solely defined by the type field. The content of the t field is undefined.

1.2 KERNELINTERFACE [Slow Systemcall]

→ void* kernel interface page
Word API Version
Word API Flags
Word Kernelld

Delivers base address of the *kernel interface page*, *API version*, and *API flags*. The latter two values are copies of the corresponding fields in the kernel interface page. The API information is delivered in registers through this system call (a) to enable unrestricted structural changes of the kernel interface page in future versions, and (b) to enable secure detection of the kernel's endian mode (little/big) and word width (32/64).

The structure of the *kernel interface page* is described on page 2. The page is a microkernel object. It is directly mapped through the microkernel into each address space upon address-space creation. It is *not* mapped by a pager, can *not* be mapped or granted to another address space and can *not* be unmapped. The creator of a new address space can specify the address where the kernel interface page has to be mapped. This address will remain constant through the lifetime of that address space.

Any thread can determine the address of the kernel interface page through this system call. Since the system call may be slow it is highly recommended to store the address in a static variable for further use.

It is also possible to use a unique address for the kernel interface page in all address spaces of a (sub)system. Then, the kernel interface page can be accessed by fixed absolute addresses without using the current system call.

Besides other things, the page describes the current API, ABI, and microkernel version so that a server or an application can find out whether and how it can run on the current microkernel. Since the kernel interface page also contains API-and ABI-specific data for most other system calls the page's base address is typically required before any other system call can be used.

To enable version detection independently of the API and ABI, the current system call is guaranteed to work in all L4 versions. The systemcall code will never change and will be the same on compatible processors. (If a processor is upward compatible to multiple incompatible processors the kernel should offer multiple systemcall codes for this function.)

Output Parameters kernel interface page Ver X.1 and above base address (32/64) Kernel interface page address, always page aligned. 0 is no valid address. Ver X.0 and below $0_{(32/64)}$ Older versions (2, X.0, etc.) do not include the kernel interface page as a kernel mapped page. No address is delivered. API Version version (8) subversion (8) \sim (16) see page 3, "Kernel Interface Page" **API Flags** wwee \sim (28/60) see page 3, "Kernel Interface Page"

KernelId

id (8) subid (8)	~ (16)
------------------	--------

see page 5, "Kernel Interface Page"

Pagefaults

No pagefaults will happen.

Generic Programming Interface

System-Call Function:

```
#include <I4/kip.h>
```

void * KernelInterface (Word& ApiVersion, ApiFlags, KernelId)

Convenience Programming Interface

Derived Functions:

```
#include <I4/kip.h>
struct MEMORYDESC { Word raw [2] }
struct PROCDESC { Word raw [4] }
void* KernelInterface ()
                                                                                       [GetKernelInterface]
                  Delivers a pointer to the kernel interface page.
Word ApiVersion ()
Word ApiFlags ()
Word KernelId ()
void KernelGenDate (void* KernelInterface, Word& year, month, day)
Word KernelVersion (void* KernelInterface)
Word KernelSupplier (void* KernelInterface)
                  Delivers the API Version/API Flags/Kernel Id/kernel generation date/kernel version/kernel sup-
                  plier.
```

Word NumProcessors (void* KernelInterface)

Word NumMemoryDescriptors (void* KernelInterface)

Delivers number of processors in the system/number of memory descriptors in the kernelinterface page.

Word PageSizeMask (void* KernelInterface)

Word PageRights (void* KernelInterface)

Delivers supported page sizes/page rights for the current kernel/hardware architecture.

Word ThreadIdBits (void* KernelInterface)

 $Word \ \textit{ThreadIdSystemBase} \ \ (void*KernelInterface)$

Word ThreadIdUserBase (void* KernelInterface)

Delivers number of valid bits for thread numbers/lowest thread number for system threads/lowest thread number for user threads.

Word ReadPrecision (void* KernelInterface)

Word SchedulePrecision (void* KernelInterface)

Delivers the SYSTEMCLOCK read precision/maximal jitter for wakeups (both in μ s).

Word UtcbAreaSizeLog2 (void* KernelInterface)

Word UtcbAlignmentLog2 (void* KernelInterface)

Word UtcbSize (void* KernelInterface)

Delivers required minimum size of UTCB area/alignment requirement for UTCBs/size of a single UTCB.

Word KipAreaSizeLog2 (void* KernelInterface)

Delivers size of kernel interface page area.

Word **BootInfo** (void* KernelInterface)

Delivers the contents of the boot info field.

char* KernelVersionString (void* KernelInterface)

Delivers the kernel version string.

char* Feature (void* KernelInterface, Word num)

Delivers the numth kernel feature string, or a null pointer if num exceeds the number of available feature strings.

MemoryDesc* MemoryDesc (void* KernelInterface, Word num)

Delivers the numth memory descriptor, or a null pointer if num exceeds the number of available descriptors.

ProcDesc* ProcDesc (void* KernelInterface, Word num)

Delivers the numth processor descriptor, or a null pointer if num exceeds the number of processors of the system (see ProcessorInfo).

Support Functions:

#include <I4/kip.h>

Word UndefinedMemoryType

Word Conventional Memory Type

Word ReservedMemoryType

Word DedicatedMemoryType

Word SharedMemoryType

Word BootLoaderSpecificMemoryType

Word ArchitectureSpecificMemoryType

Bool IsVirtual (MemoryDesc& m)

[IsMemoryDescVirtual]

Delivers true if memory descriptor specifies a virtual memory region.

Word **Type** (MemoryDesc& m)

[MemoryDescType]

Word **Low** (MemoryDesc& m)

[MemoryDescLow]

Word **High** (MemoryDesc& m)

[MemoryDescHigh]

Delivers type (t*16 + type), low limit, and high limit of memory region.

 $\label{eq:word_externalFreq} Word_{\begin{subarray}{c} \begin{subarray}{c} \begin{su$

[ProcDescExternalFreq]
[ProcDescInternalFreq]

VIRTUAL REGISTERS 11

1.3 Virtual Registers [Virtual Registers]

Virtual registers are implemented by the microkernel. They offer a fast interface to exchange data between the microkernel and user threads. Virtual registers are *registers* in the sense that they are static per-thread objects. Dependent on the specific processor type, they can be mapped to hardware registers or to memory locations. Mixtures, some virtual registers to hardware registers, some to memory are also possible. The ABI for virtual-register access depends on the specific processor type and on the virtual-register type, see Appendices A.1, ?? and C.1 for specific hardware details.

There are three classes of virtual registers:

- Thread Control Registers (TCRs), see page 16
- Message Registers (MRs), see page 50
- Buffer Registers (BRs), see page 62

Loading illegal values into virtual registers, overwriting read-only virtual registers, or accessing virtual registers of other threads in the same address space (which may be physically possible if some are mapped to memory locations) is illegal and can have undefined effects on all threads of the current address space. However, since virtual registers can *not* be accessed across address spaces, they are safe from the kernel's point of view: Illegal accesses can like any other programming bug only compromise the originator's address space.

Remark:

In general, virtual registers can only be addressed directly, not indirectly through pointers. The generic API therefore offers no operations for indirect virtual-register access. However, processor-specific code generators might use indirect access techniques if the ABI permits it.

Generic Programming Interface

```
#include <|4/message.h>

void StoreMR (int i, Word& w)

void LoadMR (int i, Word w)

Delivers/sets MR i.

void StoreMRs (int i, k, Word& [k] w)

void LoadMRs (int i, k, Word& [k] w)

Stores/loads MR i...i+k-1 to/from memory.

void StoreBR (int i, Word& w)

void LoadBR (int i, Word w)

Delivers/sets the value of BR i.

void StoreBRs (int i, k, Word& [k])

void LoadBRs (int i, k, Word& [k])

Stores/loads BR i...i+k-1 to/from memory.
```

12 VIRTUAL REGISTERS

Chapter 2

Threads

14 THREADID

2.1 ThreadId [Data Type]

Thread IDs identify threads and hardware interrupts. A thread ID can be *global* or *local*. Global thread IDs are unique through the entire system. They identify threads independently of the address space in which they are used. Local thread IDs exist per address space; the scope of a thread's local ID is only the thread's own address space. In different address spaces, the same local thread ID may identify different and unrelated threads.

Note that any thread has a global and a local thread ID. Both global and local thread IDs are encoded in a single word.

Global Thread ID

A global thread ID consists of a word, where 18 bits (32-bit processor) or 32 bits (64-bit processor) determine the thread number and 14 bits (32-bit processor) or 32 bits (64-bit processor) are available for a version number. At least one of the lowermost 6 version bits must be 1 to differentiate a global from a local thread ID.

User-thread numbers can be freely allocated within the interval [UserBase, 2^t), where t denotes the upper limit of thread IDs. The thread-number interval [SystemBase, UserBase) is reserved for L4-internal threads. Hardware interrupts are regarded as hardware-implemented threads. Consequently, they are identified by thread IDs. Their corresponding thread numbers are within the interval [0, SystemBase). The values SystemBase, UserBase, and t are published in the kernel interface page (see page 4).

global thread ID	thread no $_{(18/32)}$ version $_{(14/32)} \neq 0$ (m	
global interrupt ID	intr no _(18/32)	1 (14/32)

Global thread IDs have a version field whose content can be freely set by those threads that can create and delete threads. However, the lowermost 6 bits of the version must not all be 0, i.e. $v \mod 64 \neq 0$ must hold for every version v. For hardware interrupts, the version field is always 1.

The microkernel checks version fields whenever a thread is accessed through its global thread ID. However, the semantics of the version field are not defined by the microkernel. OS personalities are free to use this field for any purpose. For example, they may use it to make thread IDs unique in time.

Local Thread ID

Local thread IDs identify threads within the same address space. They are identified by the 6 lowermost bits being 0.

Special Thread IDs

Special IDs exist for *nilthread* and two wild cards. The thread ID *anythread* matches with any given thread ID, including all interrupt IDs. The ID *anylocalthread* matches all threads that reside in the same address space.

nilthread	0 (32/64)		
anythread	$-1_{(32/64)}$		
anylocalthread	⁻¹ (26/58)	000000	

THREADID 15

Generic Programming Interface

```
#include <|4/thread.h>

struct ThreadId Nord raw }

ThreadId nilthread

ThreadId anythread

ThreadId anylocalthread

ThreadId GlobalId (Word threadno, version)

Delivers a thread ID with indicated thread and version number.

Word Version (ThreadId t)

Word ThreadNo (ThreadId t)

Delivers version/thread number of indicated global thread ID.
```

Convenience Programming Interface

```
#include <l4/thread.h>
Bool == (ThreadId \ l, \ r)
                                                                                               [IsThreadEqual]
Bool != (ThreadId l, r)
                                                                                           [IsThreadNotEqual]
                   Check if thread IDs match or differ. The result of comparing a local ID with a global ID will
                  always indicate a mismatch, even if the IDs refer to the same thread.
Bool SameThreads (ThreadId l, r)
                   \{ GlobalId (l) == GlobalId (r) \}
                  Check if thread IDs refer to the same thread. Also works if one ID is local and the other is
Bool IsNilThread (ThreadId t)
                   \{ t == nilthread \}
Bool IsLocalId (ThreadId t)
Bool IsGlobalId (ThreadId t)
                  Check if thread ID is a local/global one.
ThreadId LocalId (ThreadId t)
                                                                                                   [LocalIdOf]
ThreadId GlobalId (ThreadId t)
                                                                                                  [GlobalIdOf]
                  Delivers the local/global ID of the specified local thread. Specifying a non-local thread delivers
                  nilthread (see EXCHANGEREGISTERS, page 18).
ThreadId MyLocalId ()
ThreadId MyGlobalId ()
                  Delivers the local/global ID of the currently running thread (see TCRs, page 16).
ThreadId Myself ()
                   { MyGlobalId () }
```

2.2 Thread Control Registers (TCRs) [Virtual Registers]

TCRs are a fast mechanism to exchange relatively static control information between user thread and microkernel. TCRs are static non-transient per-thread registers.

VirtualSender/ActualSender (32/64)	R/W	see IPC
IntendedReceiver (32/64)	R-only	see IPC
XferTimeouts (32/64)	R/W	see IPC
ErrorCode (32/64)	R-only	see system-calls
Preempt Fla	ags (8) R/W	see Scheduling
Cop Flag	s (8) W-only	see Miscellaneous
ExceptionHandler (32/64)	R/W	see Miscellaneous
Pager (32/64)	R/W	see Protocols
UserDefinedHandle (32/64)	R/W	see Threads
ProcessorNo (32/64)	R-only	see Miscellaneous
MyLocalId (32/64)	R-only	see Threads, IPC
MyGlobalId (32/64)	R-only	see Threads, IPC

MyGlobalId	Global ID of the thread.
MyLocalId	Local ID of the thread.
ProcessorNo	The processor number on which the thread currently executes.

${\it User Defined Handle}$

This field can be freely set and read by user threads. It can, e.g., be used for storing a thread number, a pointer to an additional user thread control block, etc.

Generic Programming Interface

The listed generic functions permit user code to access TCRs independently of the processor-specific TCR model. All functions are user-level functions; the microkernel is not involved.

```
#include <l4/thread.h>
ThreadId MyLocalId ()
ThreadId MyGlobalId ()
                  Delivers the local/global ID of the currently running thread (see TCRs, page 16).
ThreadId Myself ()
                   { MyGlobalId () }
Word ProcessorNo ()
                   Delivers the processor number the current thread is running on. Delivered value is a valid index
                  into the processor description array (see Kernel Interface Page, page 4).
Word UserDefinedHandle ()
void Set_UserDefinedHandle (Word NewValue)
                  Delivers/sets the user defined handle of the currently running thread.
ThreadId Pager ()
void Set_Pager (ThreadId NewPager)
                  Delivers/sets the pager for the currently running thread.
ThreadId ExceptionHandler ()
void Set_ExceptionHandler (ThreadId NewHandler)
                  Delivers/sets the exception handler for the currently running thread.
void Set_CopFlag (Word n)
void Clr_CopFlag (Word n)
                  Sets/clears coprocessor flag c_n.
Word ErrorCode ()
                   Delivers the error code of the last system-call.
Word XferTimeouts ()
void Set_XferTimeouts (Word NewValue)
                  Delivers/sets the transfer timeouts for the currently running thread (see IPC, page 66).
ThreadId IntendedReceiver ()
                  Delivers the intended receiver of last received IPC (see IPC, page 67).
ThreadId ActualSender ()
                  Delivers the actual sender of the last propagated IPC (see IPC, page 66).
void Set_VirtualSender (ThreadId t)
                  Sets the virtual sender for the next deceiving IPC (see IPC, page 66).
```

Code generators of IDL and other compilers are not restricted to the generic interface. They can use any processor-specific methods and optimizations to access TCRs.

2.3 EXCHANGEREGISTERS [Systemcall]

ThreadId ThreadId dest result Word controlWord control SPWord Word SPΙP ΙP Word Word FLAGS Word Word FLAGS ThreadId ThreadId pager pager Word UserDefinedHandleWord UserDefinedHandle

Exchanges or reads a thread's *FLAGS*, *SP*, and *IP* hardware registers as well as *pager* and *UserDefinedHandle* TCRs. Furthermore, thread execution can be suspended or resumed. The destination thread must be an *active* thread (see page 23) residing in the invoker's address space.

Any IP , SP , or FLAGS modification changes the corresponding $\mathit{user-level}$ registers of the addressed thread. In general, ongoing kernel activities are not influenced. However, a currently active IPC operation can be canceled or aborted. For details see the SR -bit specification below.

Modifications of the *pager* TCR and the *UserDefinedHandle* TCR become immediately effective, whether the destination thread executes in user mode or in kernel mode.

Input Parameters Thread ID of the addressed thread. This may be a local or a global ID. However, the addressed dest thread must reside in the current address space. Using a local thread ID might be substantially faster in some implementations. control WRCdhpufisSRH $0_{(20/52)}$ CtrlXferItems MR i Write CtrlXferItem nw $\mathsf{MR}\,_{c_{w0}+\ldots+c_{wn}+1}$ Write CtrlXferItem 0 $MR_{c_{w0}+1}$ Read CtrlXferItem nr $\mathsf{MR}\,_{c_{r0}+\ldots+c_{rn}+1}$ Read CtrlXferItem 0 MR_{c_0+1} MR_{n_c} CtrlXferConfItem nc (32) CtrlXferConfItem 0 (32) MR_0

WRC

The W, R, and C flags refer to extended, control transfer item based state manipulations. The C-flag configures the kernel use an extended control transfer protocol for kernel-generated messages (see Section 7.6). The R and W flags allow direct reading and writing for thread state using control transfer items. All control transfer items are passed in the message register of the invoking thread.

C=1 The caller requests extended state to be sent on kernel-generated messages. The extended state is specified per fault, as control transfer configuration item CtrlXferConfItem (see below). The items start at MR $_{0}$.

idmask (20/52)	fault (8)	110C	MR_i
----------------	-----------	------	--------

fault

The architecture-specific identifier of the fault, which the kernel-message is generated for.

idmask

A bitmask specifying the control transfer items to be included when sending the message. Identifiers are architecture specific. If bit n in the mask is set to 1, the kernel will append CtrlXferItem number n to the message. Note that the kernel does not permit selecting individual registers of a specific CtrlXferItem is not allowed; rather it always includes the $full\ contents$ of the particular item.

C

The continuation flag c is set for all but the last CtrlXferConfItem .

- R=1 The caller requests extended state to be read from the destination thread. Extended state is passed in the caller's message registers, as a set of control transfer items. If C=1, the first CtrlXferItem to be read follows *directly* after the last CtrlXferConfItem . If C=0, read item starts at MR $_0$. tyeThe *continuation* flag c is set for all but the last CtrlXferConfItem . Note that each read CtrlXferConfItem must provide enough space to cover all registers in the item to be read (i.e., if the item's mask specifies k registers to be read, the item must contain words for k registers).
- W=1 The caller requests extended state to be written from the destination thread. Extended state is passed in the caller's message registers, as a set of control transfer items. If R=1, the first write CtrlXferItem follows directly after the last read item. Else, if C=1, the first write CtrlXferItem follows directly after the last CtrlXferConfItem . Else, C=0, write starts at MR $_0$. The continuation flag c is set for all but the last CtrlXferConfItem .
- h p u f i s The s-flag refers to the SP register, i to IP, f to FLAGS, u to the UserDefinedHandle TCR, p to the pager TCR, and h to the H-flag. If a flag is set to 1, the register/state is overwritten by the corresponding input parameter. Otherwise, the corresponding input parameter is ignored and the register/state is not modified.
- SR Controls whether the addressed thread's ongoing IPC opereration should be canceled/aborted through the system call or not.
 - S=0 An IPC operation of the addressed thread that is currently waiting to send a message or is sending a message will continue as usual. SP, IP or FLAGS modifications are delayed until the IPC operation terminates.
 - S=1 An IPC operation of the addressed thread that is currently waiting to send a message will be *canceled*. An IPC operation that is currently sending a message will be *aborted*.
 - R=0 An IPC operation of the addressed thread that is currently waiting to receive a message or is receiving a message will continue as usual. SP, IP or FLAGS modifications are delayed until the IPC operation terminates.
 - R=1 An IPC operation of the addressed thread that is currently waiting to receive a message will be canceled. An IPC operation that is currently receiving a message will be aborted.
- Halts/resumes the thread if h = 1. Ignored for h = 0.
 - H=0 No effect if the thread was not halted. Otherwise, thread execution is resumed.

	H = 1	User-level thread execution is halted. Note that ongoing IPCs and other kernel operations are not affected by H . (See SR for also aborting active IPC.)
<i>d</i>		If $d=1$ the result parameters (IP, SP, FLAGS, UserDefinedHandle, pager, control) are delivered. If $d=0$ the return values are undefined.
SP		The current user-level stack pointer is set to SP if $s=1$. Ignored for $s=0$.
IP		The current user-level instruction pointer is set to IP if $i=1$. Ignored for $i=0$.
FLAGS	5	Sets the user-level processor flags of the thread if $f=1$. Ignored for $f=0$. The semantics of the $FLAGS$ word depends on the processor type.
UserDe	efinedHan	dle Sets the thread's $UserDefinedHandle$ TCR if $u=1$. Ignored for $u=0$.
pager		Sets the thread's pager TCR if $p=1$. Ignored for $p=0$.

Output Parameters

 $result \neq nilthread$, input parameter dest was a local thread ID

 ${\it global}$ thread ID of the addressed thread. ExchangeRegisters succeeded.

 $\textit{result} \neq \textit{nilthread}, \textit{input parameter} \textit{ dest was a global thread ID}$

local thread ID of the addressed thread. EXCHANGEREGISTERS succeeded.

result = nilthread Operation failed. The ErrorCode TCR indicates the reason for the failure.

ErrorCode [TCR] Set if result = nilthread. Undefined if $result \neq nilthread$.

=2 Invalid thread. The *dest* parameter specified an invalid thread ID, an inactive thread, or a thread within a different address space.

control		$0_{(29/61)} \hspace{3cm} SRH$
		The control parameter is only valid if $d=1$ and undefined otherwise.
Н		Reports whether the addressed thread was halted $(H=1)$ or not $(H=0)$ when EXCHANGE-REGISTERS was invoked. Note that this output $control$ bit is independent of the input parameter $control$.
SR		Reports whether the addressed thread was within an IPC operation when EXCHANGEREGISTERS was invoked. A value of 0 reports that the addressed thread was not within a send phase $(S=0)$ or not within a receive phase $(R=0)$, respectively. Note that these output $control$ bits are independent of the input parameter $control$.
	R = 1	Operation was executed while the addressed thread was within the receive phase of an IPC operation. Iff the input control word had $R=1$ the IPC operation was canceled or aborted.

	S = 1	Operation was executed while the addressed thread was within the send phase of an IPC operation. Iff the input control word had $S=1$ the IPC operation was canceled or aborted.
SP		Old user-level stack pointer of the thread, if $d=1$ and undefined for $d=0$.
IP		Old user-level instruction pointer of the thread, if $d=1$ and undefined for $d=0$.
FLAGS		Old user-level flags of the thread, if $d=1$ and undefined for $d=0$. The semantics of this word is processor specific.
UserDefi	nedHand	lle Old content of thread's <i>UserDefinedHandle</i> TCR, if $d=1$ and undefined for $d=0$.
pager		Old content of thread's $pager$ TCR, if $d=1$ and undefined for $d=0$.

Pagefaults

No pagefaults will happen.

Generic Programming Interface

System-Call Function:

#include <l4/thread.h>

ThreadId ExchangeRegisters (ThreadId dest, Word control, sp, ip, flags, UserDefinedHandle, ThreadId pager, Word& old_control, old_sp, old_ip, old_flags, old_UserDefinedHandle, ThreadId& old_pager)

Convenience Programming Interface

Derived Functions:

```
#include <l4/thread.h>
```

ThreadId **GlobalId** (ThreadId t)

[GlobalIdOf]

 $\big\{\ if\ (IsLocalId\ (t))\ ExchangeRegisters\ (t,0,\text{--}\dots)\ else\ t\ \big\}$

 $\label{lem:periodical} \mbox{ Delivers global ID of specified local thread. Specifying a non-local thread delivers $nilthread$.}$

ThreadId LocalId (ThreadId t)

[LocalIdOf]

{ if (IsGlobalId (t)) ExchangeRegisters (t,0,-...) else t }

Delivers local ID of specified local thread. Specifying a non-local thread delivers nilthread.

Word UserDefinedHandle (ThreadId t)

[UserDefinedHandleOf]

void Set_UserDefinedHandle (ThreadId t, Word handle)

 $[Set_UserDefinedHandleOf] \\$

Delivers/sets the user defined handle of specified local thread. Result of specifying a non-local thread is undefined.

ThreadId Pager (ThreadId t) [PagerOf]

void **Set_Pager** (ThreadId t, p)

[Set_PagerOf]

Delivers/sets the pager for specified local thread. Result of specifying a non-local thread is undefined

void **Start** (ThreadId t)

void Start (ThreadId t, Word sp, ip)

[Start_SpIp]

void Start (ThreadId t, Word sp, ip, flags)

[Start_SpIpFlags]

Resume execution of specified local thread (if halted). Abort any ongoing IPC operations. Optionally modify stack pointer, instruction pointer, and processor flags according to function parameters. Result of specifying a non-local thread is undefined.

ThreadState **Stop** (ThreadId t)

ThreadState Stop (ThreadId t, Word& sp, ip, flags)

[Stop_SpIpFlags]

Halt execution of specified local thread and return its current thread state. Do not abort any ongoing IPC operation. Optionally return thread's stack pointer, instruction pointer, and processor flags in output parameters. Result of specifying a non-local thread is undefined.

ThreadState AbortReceive_and_stop (ThreadId t)

ThreadState AbortReceive_and_stop (ThreadId t, Word& sp, ip, flags) [AbortReceive_and_stop_SpIpFlags] As stop (), except any ongoing IPC receive operation is immediately aborted.

ThreadState AbortSend_and_stop (ThreadId t)

ThreadState AbortSend_and_stop (ThreadId t, Word& sp, ip, flags) [AbortSend_and_stop_SpIpFlags]
As stop (), except any ongoing IPC send operation is immediately aborted.

ThreadState AbortIpc_and_stop (ThreadId t)

ThreadState AbortIpc_and_stop (ThreadId t, Word& sp, ip, flags)

[AbortIpc_and_stop_SpIpFlags]

As stop (), except any ongoing IPC send or receive operations are immediately aborted.

Support Functions:

#include <I4/thread.h>

struct THREADSTATE { Word raw }

Bool ThreadWasHalted (ThreadState s)

Bool ThreadWasSending (ThreadState s)

Bool ThreadWasReceiving (ThreadState s)

Bool ThreadWasIpcing (ThreadState s)

Query the thread state returned from one of the stop () functions.

Word ErrorCode ()

Word ErrInvalidThread

THREADCONTROL 23

2.4 THREADCONTROL [Privileged Systemcall]

ThreadId dest → Word result

ThreadId SpaceSpecifier

ThreadId scheduler

ThreadId pager

void* UtcbLocation

A privileged thread, e.g., the root server, can delete and create threads through this function. It can also modify the global thread ID (version field only) of an existing thread.

Threads can be created as *active* or *inactive* threads. Inactive threads do not execute but can be activated by active threads that execute in the same address space.

An actively created thread starts immediately by executing a short receive operation from its pager. (An active thread must have a pager.) The activeted thread expects a start message (MsgTag and two untyped words) from its pager. Once it receives the start message, it takes the value of MR $_1$ as its new IP, the value of MR $_2$ as its new SP, and then starts execution at user level with the received IP and SP. The new thread will execute on the same processor where the activating ThreadControl was invoked

Interrupt threads are treated as normal threads. They are active at system startup and can *not* be deleted or migrated into a different address space (i.e., SpaceSpecifier must be equal to the interrupt thread ID). When an interrupt occurs the interrupt thread sends an IPC to its pager and waits for an empty end-of-interrupt acknowledgment message ($MR_0=0$). Interrupt threads never raise pagefaults. To deactivate interrupt message delivery the pager is set to the interrupt thread's own ID.

Input Parameters

dest

Addressed thread. *Must be a global thread ID*. Only the thread number is effectively used to address the thread. If a thread with the specified thread number exists, its version bits are overwritten by the version bits of *dest id* and any ongoing IPC operations are aborted. Otherwise, the specified version bits are used for thread creations, i.e., a thread creation generates a thread with ID *dest*.

SpaceSpecifier ≠ nilthread, dest not existing

Creation. The space specifier specifies in which address space the thread will reside. Since address space do not have own IDs, a thread ID is used as *SpaceSpecifier*. Its meaning is: the new thread should execute in the same address space as the thread *SpaceSpecifier*.

The first thread in a new address space is created with *SpaceSpecifier = dest*. This operation implicitly creates a new empty address space. Note that the new address space is created with an empty UTCB and KIP area. The space creation *must* therefore be completed by a SPACECONTROL operation before the thread(s) can execute.

$SpaceSpecifier \neq nilthread, dest exists$

Modification Only. The addressed thread *dest* is neither deleted nor created. Modifications can change the version bits of the thread ID, the associated scheduler, the pager, or the associated address space, i.e., migrate the thread to a new address space.

SpaceSpecifier = nilthread, dest exists

Deletion. The addressed thread dest is deleted. Deleting the last thread of an address space implicitly also deletes the address space.

scheduler ≠ nilthread

Defines the scheduler thread that is permitted to schedule the addressed thread. Note that the scheduler thread must exist when the addressed thread starts executing.

24 THREADCONTROL

scheduler = nilthread

The current scheduler association is not modified. This variant is illegal for a creating THREAD-CONTROL operation.

 $pager \neq nilthread$ The

The pager of *dest* is set to the specified thread. If *dest* was inactive before, it is *activated*.

pager = nilthread

The current pager association is not modified.

If used with a creating THREADCONTROL operation, dest is created as an inactive thread.

$UtcbLocation \neq -1$

The start address of the UTCB of the thread is set to UtcbLocation. Upon thread activation the UTCB must fit entirely into the UTCB area of the configured address space, and must be properly aligned according to the UtcbInfo field of the kernel interface page. It is the application's responsibility to ensure that UTCBs of multiple threads do not overlap. Changing the UtcbLocation of an already active thread is an illegal operation. Note that since a newly created space has an empty UTCB area, it is not possible to activate a thread in an address space which has not been properly configured with SPACECONTROL.

UtcbLocation = -1 The UTCB location is not modified.

UtcbInfo [KernelInterfacePage Field]

Permits to calculate the appropriate page size of the UTCB area fpage and specifies the size and alignement of UTCBs. Note that the size restricts the total number of threads that can reside in an address space.

\sim $_{(10/42)}$ s $_{(6)}$ a $_{(6)}$ m $_{(10)}$

The minimal area size for an address space's UTCB area is 2^s . The size of the UTCB area limits the total number of threads k to $2^a mk \le 2^s$.

m UTCB size multiplier.

The UTCB location must be aligned to 2^a . The total size required for one UTCB is $2^a m$.

Output Parameters

result

The result is 1 if the operation succeeded, otherwise the result is 0 and the ErrorCode TCR indicates the failure reason.

ErrorCode [TCR] Set if result = 0. Undefined if $result \neq 0$.

- = 1 No privilege. Current thread does not have have privilege to perform the operation.
- = 2 Unavailable thread. The *dest* parameter specified a kernel thread or an unavailable interrupt thread.
- =3 Invalid space. The *SpaceSpecifier* parameter specified an invalid thread ID, or activation of a thread in a not yet initialized space.
- = 4 Invalid scheduler. The *scheduler* paramter specified an invalid thread ID, or was set to *nilthrad* for a creating THREADCONTROL operation.
- = 6 Invalid UTCB location. *UtcbLocation* lies outside of UTCB area, or attempt to change the *UtcbLocation* for an already active thread.

THREADCONTROL 25

= 8 Out of memory. Kernel was not able to allocate the resources required to perform the operation.

Pagefaults

No pagefaults will happen.

Generic Programming Interface

System-Call Function:

#include <l4/thread.h>

Word ThreadControl (ThreadId dest, SpaceSpecifier, Scheduler, Pager, void* UtcbLocation)

Convenience Programming Interface

Derived Functions:

#include <I4/thread.h>

Word AssociateInterrupt (ThreadId InterruptThread, InterruptHandler)
{ ThreadControl (InterruptThread, InterruptThread, nilthread, InterruptHandler, -1) }

Associate a handler thread with the specified interrupt source.

Word DeassociateInterrupt (ThreadId InterruptThread)

 $\big\{\ ThreadControl\ (InterruptThread,\ InterruptThread,\ nilthread,\ InterruptThread,\ -1)\ \big\}$

Remove association between the specified interrupt source and any potential handler thread.

Support Functions:

Word ErrorCode ()

Word ErrNoPrivilege

Word ErrInvalidThread

Word ErrInvalidSpace

Word ErrInvalidScheduler

Word ErrUtcbArea

Word ErrNoMem

26 THREADCONTROL

Chapter 3

Scheduling

28 CLOCK

3.1 Clock [Data Type]

On both 32-bit and 64-bit processors, the system clock is represented as a 64-bit unsigned counter. The clock measures time in 1 μ s units, independent of the processor frequency. Although the clock base is undefined, it is guaranteed that the counter will not overflow for at least 1,000 years.

Generic Programming Interface

#include <I4/schedule.h>

struct CLOCK { Word64 raw }

Convenience Programming Interface

#include <l4/schedule.h>

Clock + (Clock l, r) [ClockAdd]

Clock + (Clock l, Word64 r) [ClockAddUsec]

Clock + (Clock l, int r)

Clock - (Clock l, r) [ClockSub]

Clock - (Clock l, Word64 r) [ClockSubUsec]

Clock - (Clock l, int r)

Adds/subtracts a number of μs to/from a clock value. Delivers new clock value. Does not modify the old clock value.

Bool < (Clock l, r) [IsClockEarlier]

Bool > (Clock l, r) [IsClockLater]

Bool <= (Clock l, r)

Bool >= (Clock l, r)

 $Bool == (Clock \, l, \, r)$ [IsClockEqual]

 $Bool != (Clock \ l, r)$ [IsClockNotEqual]

Compares two clock values.

SYSTEMCLOCK 29

3.2	SYSTEMCLOCK	[Systemcall]
J.Z	SISIEMULUUK	isvstemcaiii

→ Clock clock

Delivers the current system clock. Typically, the operation does not enter kernel mode.

Pagefaults

No pagefaults will happen.

Generic Programming Interface

System-Call Function:

#include <l4/schedule.h>

Clock SystemClock ()

30 TIME

3.3 Time [Data Type]

Time values are used to specify send/receive timeouts for IPC operations (see page 65) and time quanta for scheduling (see page 33). The unit for time periods as well as for time points is 1 μ s. Clock ticks thus happen every μ s.

Relative time values specify a time period. Time periods are encoded as un-normalized 16-bit floating-point numbers. (Note that for easier handling the mantissa can have leading 0-bits.) The shortest non-zero time period that can be specified is 1 μ s, the longest finite period slightly exceeds 610 hours. Two special periods frequently used for timeouts are 0 and ∞ , a never ending period. The values 0 and ∞ have special encodings.

Absolute time values specify a point in time. They are only valid for a limited period, at maximum 67 seconds.

For a semantical description of time-point values, we use Clock to denote the current clock value in μ s, $x_{[i]}$ to denote bit i of x, and $x_{[i,j]}$ to denote the number consisting of bits i to j of x. Then, the time-point value (c, m, e) specifies the point:

$$t \ = \ \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} 2^e \cdot \left(m + Clock_{_{[63,e+9]}} \cdot 2^{10} \right) & \text{if} \quad Clock_{_{[e+10]}} = c \\ \\ 2^e \cdot \left(m + Clock_{_{[63,e+9]}} \cdot 2^{10} + 2^{10} \right) & \text{if} \quad Clock_{_{[e+10]}} \neq c \end{array} \right.$$

Absolute time values are thus the more precise the nearer in the future they are.

Absolute time values with maximal precision become invalid just after the clock has reached the specified point in time. The validity interval can be expanded, but only by reducing the precision. In general, a time-point value (c, m, e) that is constructed when the current clock value is C_0 is valid from C_0 up to

$$C_0 + (2^{10} - 1) \cdot 2^e$$

Therefore, a time-point value that should remain valid for 10 ms can have a precision of 10 μ s whereas a value that should remain valid for an entire second can only have a precision of 1 ms. In general, a precision of 0.1% of the required validity interval can be achieved.

Generic Programming Interface

#include <l4/schedule.h>

struct **TIME** { Word16 raw }

Time Never

Time ZeroTime

Time **TimePeriod** (Word64 microseconds)

TIME 31

Time TimePoint (Clock at)

Convenience Programming Interface

#include <l4/schedule.h>

 $Time + (Time \ l, Word \ r)$ [TimeAddUsec]

 $Time += (Time \ l, \ Word \ r)$ [TimeAddUsecTo]

 $Time - (Time \ l, Word \ r)$ [TimeSubUsec]

 $Time -= (Time \ l, \ Word \ r)$ [TimeSubUsecFrom]

Adds/subtracts a number of microseconds to/from a time value.

 $Time + (Time \ l, \ r)$ [TimeAdd]

Time += (Time l, r) [TimeAddTo]

 $Time - (Time \ l, \ r)$ [TimeSub]

Time -= (Time l, r) [TimeSubFrom]

Adds/subtracts a time period to/from a time value. The result of adding/subtracting a time point is undefined.

 $Bool > (Time \ l, r)$ [IsTimeLonger]

 $Bool >= (Time \ l, \ r)$

Bool < (Time l, r) [IsTimeShorter]

 $Bool <= (Time \ l, \ r)$

 $Bool == (Time \ l, r)$ [IsTimeEqual]

 $Bool != (Time \ l, r)$ [IsTimeNotEqual]

Compares two time values. The result of comparing a time period with a time point, or vice versa, is undefined.

32 THREADSWITCH

3.4 THREADSWITCH [Systemcall]

ThreadId dest \longrightarrow void

The invoking thread releases the processor (non-preemptively) so that another ready thread can be processed.

Input Parameter

dest = nilthread

Processing switches to an undefined ready thread which is selected by the scheduler. (It might be the invoking thread.) Since this is "ordinary" scheduling, the thread gets a new timeslice.

dest ≠ nilthread

If *dest* is ready, processing switches to this thread. In this "extraordinary" scheduling, the invoking thread donates its remaining timeslice to the destination thread. (This one gets the donation in addition to its ordinarily scheduled timeslices, if any.)

If the destination thread is not ready or resides on a different processor, the system call operates as described for dest = nilthread.

Pagefaults

No pagefaults will happen.

Generic Programming Interface

System-Call Function:

#include <l4/schedule.h>

void ThreadSwitch (ThreadId dest)

Convenience Programming Interface

Derived Functions:

#include <l4/schedule.h>

void Yield ()

{ ThreadSwitch (nilthread) }

Switch processing to a thread selected by the scheduler.

3.5 SCHEDULE [Systemcall]

ThreadId dest → Word result
Word time control Word time control

Word processor control

Word prio

Word preemption control

The system call can be used by schedulers to define the *priority, timeslice length*, and other scheduling parameters of threads. Furthermore, it delivers thread states.

The system call is only effective if the calling thread resides in the same address space as the destination thread's scheduler (see *thread control*, page 23).

Input Parameters

dest

Destination thread ID. The destination thread must be existent (but can be inactive) and the current thread must reside in the same address space as the destination thread's scheduler (see *thread control*). Otherwise, the destination thread is not affected.

All further input parameters have no effect if the supplied value is -1, ensuring that the corresponding internal thread variable is *not* modified. The following description always refers to values $\neq -1$.

time control	ts len (16)	total quantum (16)
	(10)	1 (10)

ts len

New timeslice length for the destination thread. The timeslice length is specified as a time period (see page 30). Absolute time values and the value 0 are illegal. A timeslice length of ∞ , however, can be specified. In that case, the thread never experiences a preemption due to exhausted time slice. The specified value is always rounded up to the nearest possible timeslice length. In particular, a time period of 1 μ s results in the shortest possible timeslice.

Writing the timeslice length initializes the current quantum with the new length. After the quantum is exhausted, the thread is preempted while the quantum is reloaded with *ts len* for the next timeslice.

total quantum

Defines the total quantum for the thread. Exhaustion of the total quantum results in an RPC to the thread's scheduler (i.e., the current thread). (Re)writing the total quantum re-initializes the quantum, independent of the already consumed total quantum. The total quantum is specified as a time period (see page 30). Absolute time values are illegal. A total quantum of ∞ can be specified.

New priority for destination thread. Must be less than or equal to current thread's priority.

preemption control	0 (8/40)	sensitive prio (8)	maximum delay (16)
	(8/40)	1 (8)	(10)

sensitive prio

Preemptions by threads that run on a priority lower or equal to this sensitive prio will, (a) if the *delay-preemption* flag is set, be delayed until the thread executes a *thread switch* (*nilthread*) system call; and (b) if the signal-preemption flag is set, raise a preemption fault to the exception handler.

No preemption delays or signaling will occur if preempted by a thread having a higher priority than sensitive prio, regardless of the state of the delay-preemption and signal-preemption flags.

maximum delay

The maximum time in μs a pending preemption can be delayed in the destination thread. The value 0 effectively disables preemption delay.

processor control

processor number (16) $0_{(16/48)}$

time control

processor number Specifies the processor number to which the thread should be migrated. The processor number must be valid, i.e., smaller than the total number of processors (see kernel interface page at page 3). Otherwise, the parameter is ignored. The first processor number is denoted as 0.

Output Parameters

result	~ (24/56)	tstate (8)	
tstate =	Thread state:		
0	Error. The operation failed completely. The ErrorCod	e TCR indicates the reason for the failure.	
1	Dead. The thread is unable to execute or does not exist	st.	
2	<i>Inactive</i> . The thread is inactive/stopped.		
3	Running. The thread is ready to execute at user-level.		
4 Pending send. A user-invoked IPC send operation of to become ready to receive.		urrently waits for the destination (recipient)	
5	Sending. A user-invoked IPC send operation currently transfers an outgoing message.		
6	Waiting to receive. A user-invoked IPC receive operation currently waits for an incoming message.		
7	Receiving. A user-invoked IPC receive operation currently receives an incoming message.		
ErrorCode [TCR]	Set if lower 8 bits of $result = 0$. Undefined if lower 8	bits of $result \neq 0$.	
= 1	= 1 No privilege. Current thread is not the scheduler of the destination thread.		
=2	= 2 The <i>dest</i> parameter specified an invalid thread ID.		
= 5	Invalid parameter. The specified time-slice length, total quantum, priority, or processor number was invalid.		

rem total (16)

rem ts (16)

rem ts Remainder of the current timeslice.

rem total Remaining total quantum of the thread.

Pagefaults

No pagefaults will happen.

Generic Programming Interface

System-Call Function:

```
#include <I4/schedule.h>
```

Word Schedule (ThreadId dest, Word TimeControl, ProcessorControl, prio, PreemptionControl, Word&old_TimeControl)

Convenience Programming Interface

Derived Functions:

```
#include <|4/schedule.h>

Word Set_Priority (ThreadId dest, Word prio)
{ Schedule (dest, -1, -1, prio, -1) }

Word Set_ProcessorNo (ThreadId dest, Word ProcessorNo)
{ Schedule (dest, -1, ProcessorNo, -1, -1) }

Word Timeslice (ThreadId dest, Time & ts, Time & tq)
Delivers the remaining timeslice and total quantum of the given thread.

Word Set_Timeslice (ThreadId dest, Time ts, Time tq)
{ Schedule (dest, ts * 2<sup>16</sup> + tq, -1, -1, -1) }

Word Set_PreemptionDelay (ThreadId dest, Word sensitivePrio, Word maxDelay)
{ Schedule (dest, -1, -1, -1, SensitivePrio * 2<sup>16</sup> + MaxDelay) }
```

Support Functions:

```
Word ErrorCode ()
Word ErrNoPrivilege
Word ErrInvalidThread
```

Word ErrInvalidParam

PREEMPT FLAGS 37

3.6 Preempt Flags [TCR]

The *preemption flags* TCR controls asynchronous preemptions (timeslice exhausted or activation of a higher-priority thread including device interrupts).

Preempt Flags	$I \mid d \mid s \mid \qquad \sim$		
	The ds -flags are used to control the microkernel. User threads can set/reset them. The I -flag signals an event to the user. It is set by the microkernel and typically read/reset by the user.		
s = 0	Asynchronous preemptions are not signaled to the exception handler.		
s = 1	Asynchronous preemptions are signaled as preemption faults to the exception handler. If $d=0$ this happens immediately. Otherwise, it is delayed until the thread continues execution after the preemption.		
d = 0	All asynchronous preemptions happen immediately. If they are signaled as preemption faults $(s=1)$, this happens <i>after</i> the preemption took place, i.e., when the thread gets reactivated.		
d = 1	Asynchronous preemptions are delayed if the priority of the preemptor is lower or equal than the <i>sensitive priority</i> for the current thread. (The sensitive priority is set by the scheduler, see page 34.) A delayed preemption does not interrupt the current thread immediately but is post-poned until the current thread invokes a systemcall <i>thread switch (nilthread)</i> . However, a pending preemption must not be delayed for longer than the <i>maximum delay</i> that was set by the thread's scheduler. Such a preemption-delay overflow resets the d bit and is signaled to the exception handler.		
I = 0	No asynchronous preemption is pending.		
I = 1	An asynchronous preemption is currently pending, i.e., the thread should as soon as possible reset the d -flag and invoke $thread\ switch$. Invoking $thread\ switch$ re-enables the $maximum\ delay$ for the next delayed asynchronous preemption. Invoking $thread\ switch$ is not required if no asynchronous preemption is pending $(I=0)$ after		

Generic Programming Interface

#include <|4/schedule.h>

Bool EnablePreemptionFaultException ()

Bool DisablePreemptionFaultException ()

Sets/resets the s-flag and delivers the old s-flag value (true = set).

Bool DisablePreemption ()

Bool EnablePreemption ()

Sets/resets the d-flag and delivers the old d-flag value (true = set).

Bool PreemptionPending ()

Resets the I-flag and delivers the old I-flag value (true = set).

the user thread has reset the d-flag.

38 PREEMPT FLAGS

Chapter 4

Address Spaces and Mapping

40 FPAGE

4.1 Fpage [Data Type]

Fpages (Flexpages) are regions of the virtual address space. An fpage consists of all pages mapped actually in this region sans kernel mapped objects, i.e., kernel interface page and UTCBs. Fpages have a size of at least 1 K. For specific processors, the minimal fpage size may be larger; e.g., a Pentium processor offers a minimal page size of 4 K while the Alpha processor offers smallest pages of 8 K. Fpages smaller than the minimal page size are treated as nilpages. The kernel interface page (see page 3) specifies which page sizes are supported by the hardware/kernel. An fpage of size 2^s has a 2^s -aligned base address b, i.e., $b \equiv 0 \pmod{2^s}$, where $s \ge 10$ for all architectures. Mapped fpages are considered inseparable objects. That is, if an fpage is mapped, the mapper can not later partially

Mapped fpages are considered inseparable objects. That is, if an fpage is mapped, the mapper can not later partially unmap the mapped page; the whole fpage must be unmapped in a single operation. The mappee can, however, separate the fpage and map fpages (objects) of smaller size. Partially unmapping an fpage might or might not work on some systems. The kernel will give no indication as to whether such an operation succeeded or not.

$fpage\ (b,2^s)$	$b/2^{10}$ (22/54)	s (6)	0 r w x
	. (==/ ==/	(-)	1

Special fpage denoters describe the *complete* user address space and the *nilpage*, an fpage which has no base address and a size of 0:

complete	0 (22/54)	$s = 1_{(6)}$	$\left[0rwx ight]$
nilpage	0 (32/64)		

Access Rights

rwx The rwx bits define the accessibility of the fpage:

r readable

w writable

x executable

A bit set to one permits the corresponding access to the newly-mapped/granted page *provided* that the mapper itself possesses that access right. If the mapper does not have the access right itself or if the bit is set to zero the mapped/granted page will not get the corresponding access right.

Note that processor architectures may impose restrictions on the access-right combinations. However, read-only (including execute), rwx=101, and read/write/execute, rwx=111, should be valid for any processor architecture. The kernel interface page (see page 3) specifies which access rights are supported in the processor architecture.

Generic Programming Interface

#include <l4/space.h>

struct **FPAGE** { Word raw }

Word Readable

Word Writable

FPAGE 41

Word eXecutable Word FullyAccessible Word ReadeXecOnly Word NoAccess Fpage Nilpage Fpage CompleteAddressSpace Bool IsNilFpage (Fpage f) $\{ f == Nilpage \}$ Fpage Fpage (Word BaseAddress, int FpageSize $\geq 1K$) Fpage FpageLog2 (Word BaseAddress, int Log2FpageSize < 64) Delivers an fpage with the specified location and size. Word Address (Fpage f) Word Size (Fpage f) Word SizeLog2 (Fpage f) Delivers address/size of specified fpage. Word **Rights** (Fpage f) void Set_Rights (Fpage& f, Word AccessRights) Delivers/sets the access rights for the specified fpage. Fpage + (Fpage f, Word AccessRights) [FpageAddRights] Fpage += (Fpage f, Word AccessRights) $[FpageAddRightsTo] % \label{fig:pageAddRightsTo} % \label{fig:pa$ Fpage - (Fpage f, Word AccessRights) [FpageRemoveRights] Fpage -= (Fpage f, Word Access Rights)[FpageRemoveRightsFrom]Adds/removes specified access rights from fpage. Delivers new fpage value.

42 UNMAP

4.2 UNMAP [Systemcall]

Word control \longrightarrow void

The specified fpages (located in MR $_{0...}$) are unmapped. Fpages are mapped as part of the IPC operation (see page 64).

Input Parameters

control $0_{(25/57)}$ $k_{(6)}$ Specifies the highest MR_k that holds an fpage to be unmapped. The number of fpages is thus kThe fpages are unmapped recursively in all address spaces in which threads of the current adf = 0dress space have mapped them before. However, the fpages remain unchanged in the current address space. f = 1The fpages are unmapped like in the f=0 case and, in addition, also in the current address space. **FpageList** $MR_{0...k}$ Fpages to be processed. Fpage MR i fpage (28/58) $0 \, r \, w \, x$ Fpage to be unmapped. (The term unmapped is used even if effectively no access right is removed.) A nilpage specifies a no-op. Any access bit set to 1 revokes the corresponding access right. A 0-bit specifies that the corre-0rwxsponding access right should not be affected. Typical examples: =0111Complete unmap of the fpage. =0010 Partial unmap, revoke writability only. As a result, the fpage is set to read-only. No unmap. This case is particularly useful if only dirty and accessed bits should be read and =0000reset without changing the mapping.

Output Parameters

FpageList $MR_{0...k}$ The accessed status bits in the fpages are updated.

UNMAP 43

Fpage MR $_i$	fpage (28/58) 0 R W X
	The status bits <i>Referenced</i> , <i>Written</i> , and <i>eXecuted</i> of all pages processed by the unmap operation are reset and the bitwise OR-ed old values of all the processed pages are delivered in MR $_{0k}$. For processors that do not differentiate between read access and execute access, the R and X bits are unified: either both are set or both are reset. Resetting status bits is not a recursive operation. However, the status bit values for pages within the current space will also reflect accesses performed on recursive mappings.
R = 0	No part of the fpage has been <i>Referenced</i> after the last unmap operation (or after the initial map operation). This includes all recursively mapped pages. <i>Remark:</i> The meaning of <i>referenced</i> slightly differs from <i>read.</i> Not being referenced means that not only no read access but that also no write and execute access occurred.
R = 1	At least one page of the specified fpage (including all recursive mappings) has been referenced after the last unmap operation (or after the initial map operation). All in-kernel R bits are reset $Remark$: The meaning of $referenced$ slightly differs from $read$. Write accesses and execute accesses also set the R bit.
W = 0	No part of the fpage has been written after the last unmap operation (or after the initial map operation), i.e., the fpage is <i>clean</i> . This includes all recursively mapped pages.
W = 1	At least one page of the specified fpage (including all recursive mappings) has been written after the last unmap operation (or after the initial map operation), i.e., the fpage is <i>dirty</i> . All in-kernel dirty bits are reset.
X = 0	No part of the fpage has been <i>eXecuted</i> after the last unmap operation (or after the initial map operation). This includes all recursively mapped pages.
X = 1	At least one page of the specified fpage (including all recursive mappings) has been executed after the last unmap operation (or after the initial map operation). All in-kernel X bits are reset. Remark: For processors that do not differentiate between read and execute accesses, the X bit is set to 1 iff $R=1$.

Pagefaults

No pagefaults will happen.

Generic Programming Interface

System-Call Function:

#include <14/space.h>

void Unmap (Word control)

Convenience Programming Interface

Derived Functions:

```
#include <I4/space.h>
```

Recursively unmaps the specified fpage(s) from all address spaces except the current one.

44 UNMAP

```
Fpage Flush (Fpage f) { LoadMR (0, f); Unmap (64); StoreMR (0, f); f } 

void Flush (Word n, Fpage& [n] fpages) [FlushFpages] { LoadMRs (0, n, fpages); Unmap (64 + n - 1); StoreMRs (0, n, fpages); } 

Recursively unmaps the specified fpage(s) from all address spaces, including the current one.

Fpage GetStatus (Fpage f) { LoadMR (0, f - FullyAccessible); Unmap (0); StoreMR (0, f); f } 

Resets and delivers the status bits of the specified fpage.

Bool WasReferenced (Fpage f) 

Bool WasWritten (Fpage f) 

Checks the status bits of specified fpage. The specified fpage must be the output of an Unmap (), Flush (), or GetStatus () function.
```

4.3 SPACECONTROL [Privileged Systemcall]

ThreadId SpaceSpecifier → Word result Word control Word control

Fpage KernelInterfacePageArea

Fpage UtcbArea ThreadId Redirector

A privileged thread, e.g., the root server, can configure address spaces through this function.

Input Parameters

SpaceSpecifier

Since address spaces do not have ids, a thread ID is used as *SpaceSpecifier*. It specifies the address space in which the thread resides. The *SpaceSpecifier* thread must exist although it may be inactive or not yet started. In particular, the thread may reside in an empty address space that is not yet completely created.

KernelInterfacePageArea

Specifies the fpage where the kernel should map the kernel interface page. The supplied fpage must have a size specified in the *KipAreaInfo* field of the kernel interface page, must fit entirely into the user-accessible part of the address space and must not overlap with the UTCB area (see below). Address 0 of the kernel interface page is mapped to the fpage's base address.

The value is ignored if there is at least one active thread in the address space.

KipAreaInfo [KernelInterfacePage Field]

Permits calculation of the appropriate page size of the KernelInterface area fpage.

\sim (26/58)	s (6)
	1

s The size of the kernel interface page area is 2^s .

UtcbArea

Specifies the fpage where the kernel should map the UTCBs of all threads executing in the address space. The fpage must fit entirely into the user-accessible part of an address space and must not overlap with the KIP area. The fpage size has to be at least the smallest supported hardware-page size. In fact, the size of the UTCB area restricts the maximum number of threads that can be created in the address space. See the kernel interface page for the space and alignment that is required for UTCBs.

The value is ignored if there is at least one active thread in the address space.

UtcbInfo [KernelInterfacePage Field]

Permits to calculate the appropriate page size of the UTCB area fpage and specifies the size and alignment of UTCBs. Note that the size restricts the total number of threads that can reside in an address space.

$\sim_{(10/42)}$	S (6)	$a_{(6)}$	$m_{(10)}$

The minimal area size for an address space's UTCB area is 2^s . The size of the UTCB area limits the total number of threads k to $2^a mk \le 2^s$.

m UTCB size multiplier.

The UTCB location must be aligned to 2^a . The total size required for one UTCB is $2^a m$.

Redirector = nilthread

The current redirector setting for the specified space is not modified.

Redirector = anythread

All threads within the specified space are allowed to communicate with any thread in the system.

 $Redirector \neq anythread, \neq nilthread$

All threads within the specified address space are only allowed to send an IPC to a local thread or to a thread in the same address space as the specified redirector. All other send operations will be deflected to the redirector, the *redirected bit* (see page 67) in the received message will be set, and the *IntendedReceiver* TCR will indicate the intended receiver of the message.

control

a

The control field is architecture specific (see Appendix A.5). It is undefined for some architectures, but should for reasons of upward compatibility be set to zero.

Output Parameters

result

The result is 1 if the operation succeeded, otherwise the result is 0 and the ErrorCode TCR indicates the failure reason.

ErrorCode [TCR] Set if result = 0. Undefined if $result \neq 0$.

- = 1 No privilege. Current thread does not have privilege to perform operation.
- = 3 Invalid space. The *SpaceSpecifier* parameter specified an invalid thread ID.
- = 6 Invalid UTCB area. Specified UTCB area too small (see UTCB info on page 4) or not within user accessible virtual memory region (see Memory Descriptors on page 6).
- = 7 Invalid KIP area. Specified KIP area too small (see KIP area info on page 4) or not within user accessible virtual memory region (see Memory Descriptors on page 6) or KIP area overlaps with UTCB area.

control

Delivers the space control value that was effective for the thread when the operation was invoked. The value is architecture specific.

Pagefaults

No pagefaults will happen.

Generic Programming Interface

System-Call Function:

#include <l4/space.h>

 $Word~\textbf{SpaceControl}~(ThreadId~SpaceSpecifier,~Word~control,~Fpage~KernelInterfacePageArea,~UtcbArea,~ThreadId~Redirector,~Word\&~old_Control)$

Convenience Programming Interface

Support Functions:

Word ErrorCode ()

Word ErrNoPrivilege

Word ErrInvalidSpace

Word ErrUtcbArea

Word ErrKipArea

Chapter 5

IPC

5.1 Messages And Message Registers (MRs) [Virtual Registers]

Messages can be sent and received through the IPC system call (see page 64). Basically, the sender writes a message into the sender's message registers (MRs) and the receiver reads it from the receiver's MRs. Each thread has 64 MRs, $MR_{0...63}$. A message can use some or all MRs to transfer untyped words; it can include memory strings and fpages which are also specified using MRs.

MRs are *virtual registers* (see page 11), but they are more transient than TCRs. *MRs are read-once registers*: once an MR has been read, its value is undefined until the MR is written again. The send phase of an IPC implicitly reads all MRs; the receive phase writes the received message into MRs.

The read-once property permits to implement MRs not only by special registers or memory locations, but also by general registers. Writing to such an MR has to block the corresponding general register for code-generator use; reading the MR can release it. Typically, code generated by an IDL compiler will load MRs just before an IPC system call and store them to user variables just afterwards.

Messages

A message consists of up to 3 sections: the mandatory *message tag*, followed by an optional *untyped-words* section, followed by an optional *typed-items* section. The message tag is always held in MR₀. It contains message control information and the *message label* which can be freely set by the user. The kernel associates no semantics with it. Often, the message label is used to encode a request key or to define the method that should be invoked by the message.

MsgTag [MR ₀]	label (16/48)	flags (4)	$u_{\ (6)}$	
u	Number of untyped words following a message without untyped words.	word 0. MR $_{1u}$ ho	ld the untype	d words. $u = 0$ denotes
t	Number of typed-item words following the untyped words or the message tag if no untyped words are present. The typed items use MR_{u+1u+t} . A message without typed items has $t=0$.			
flags	Message flags, see IPC systemcall, pa	age 64.		
label	Freely available, often used to specify	y the request type or	invoked meth	od.

untyped words [MR_{1...u}]

The optional untyped-words section holds arbitrary data that is untyped from the kernel's point of view. The data is simply copied to the receiver. The kernel associates no semantics with it.

typed items $[MR_{u+1...u+t}]$

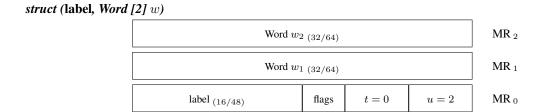
The optional typed-items section is a sequence of items such as *string items* (page 59), *map items* (page 55), *grant items* (page 57), and (page 58) *ctrl transfer items*. Typed message items have their type encoded in the lowermost 4 bits of their first word:

0hhC	StringItem	see page 59
100C	MapItem	see page 55
101C	GrantItem	see page 57
110C	CtrlXferItem	see page 58
111C	Reserved	

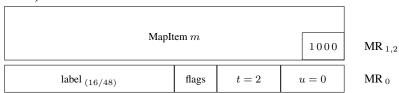
The C bit signals whether the typed item is followed by another typed item (C=1) or is the last one of the typed-item section (C=0). The typed items *must* exactly fit into MR $_{u+1...u+t}$.

Note that C and t redundantly describe the message. This is by intention. The C bit allows efficient message parsing, whereas t+u can be used to store all MRs of a message to memory without parsing the complete message. Upon message sending, the C bits are completely ignored. The kernel will, however, ensure that the MRs on the receiver side will have the C bits set properly.

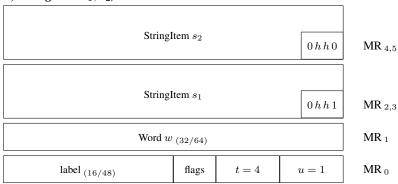
Example Messages



struct (label, MapItem m)



struct (label, Word w, StringItem s_1, s_2)



struct (label, Word [3] w, MapItem m, GrantItem g, StringItem s)

StringItem s 0 h h 0	MR _{8,9}
GrantItem g 1011	MR _{6,7}
MapItem m 1001	MR 4,5
Word w _{3 (32/64)}	MR 3
Word w _{2 (32/64)}	MR 2
Word w _{1 (32/64)}	MR 1
	MR ₀

Generic Programming Interface

The listed generic functions permit user code to access message registers independently of the processor-specific MR model. All functions are user-level functions; the microkernel is not involved.

MsgTag

```
#include <l4/ipc.h>
struct MsgTag { Word raw }
MsgTag Niltag
                  A message tag with no untyped or typed words, no label, and no flags.
Bool == (MsgTag \ l, \ r)
                                                                                          [IsMsgTagEqual]
Bool != (MsgTag \ l, \ r)
                                                                                      [IsMsgTagNotEqual]
                  Compares all field values of two message tags.
Word Label (Msg Tag t)
Word UntypedWords (Msg Tag t)
Word TypedWords (Msg Tag t)
                 Delivers the message label, number of untyped words, and number of typed words, respectively.
MsgTag + (MsgTag t, Word label)
                                                                                        [MsgTagAddLabel]
MsgTag += (MsgTag t, Word label)
                                                                                      [MsgTagAddLabelTo]
                  Adds a label to a message tag. Old label information is overwritten by the new label.
MsgTag MsgTag ()
void Set_MsgTag (MsgTag t)
                  Delivers/sets MR 0.
```

Convenience Programming Interface

IDL-compiler generated Operations

IDL code generators are not restricted to the generic interface for accessing MRs. Instead, they can use processor-specific methods and thus generate heavily optimized code for MR access.

However, such processor-specific MR operations are not generally defined and should be used exclusively by processor-specific IDL code generators. All other programs must use the operations defined in this generic interface.

Msg

#include <l4/ipc.h>

struct Msg { Word raw [64] }

Void Put (Msg& msg, Word l, int u, Word& [u] ut, int t, {MapItem, GrantItem, StringItem} & Items) [MsgPut]
 Loads the specified parameters into the memory object msg. The parameters u and t respectively indicate number of untyped words and number of typed words (i.e., the total size of all typed items). It is assumed that the msg object is large enough to contain all items.

void Get (Msg& msg, Word& ut, {MapItem, GrantItem, StringItem} & Items) [MsgGet]

Stores the msg object into the specified parameters. Type consistency between the message in the memory object and the specified parameter list is not checked.

MsgTag MsgTag (Msg& msg) [MsgMsgTag]

void Set_MsgTag (Msg& msg, MsgTag t)

[Set_MsgMsgTag]

Delivers/sets the message tag of the msg object.

Word Label (Msg& msg) [MsgLabel]

void Set Label (Msg& msg, Word label)

[Set_MsgLabel]

Delivers/sets the label of the msg object.

void Load (Msg&msg) [MsgLoad]

Loads message registers MR $_{0...}$ from the msg object.

void **Store** (MsgTag t, Msg& msg)

[MsgStore]

Stores the message tag t and the current message beginning with MR $_1$ to the memory object $\it msg$. The number of message registers to be stored is derived from t.

void Clear (Msg&msg) [MsgClear]

Empties the msg object (i.e., clears the message tag).

void Append (Msg& msg, Word w) [MsgAppendWord]

void Append (Msg& msg, MapItem m) [MsgAppendMapItem]

void Append (Msg& msg, GrantItem g) [MsgAppendGrantItem]

void Append (Msg& msg, StringItem s) [MsgAppendSimpleStringItem]

void Append (Msg& msg, StringItem& s)

[MsgAppendStringItem]

Appends an untyped or a typed item to the *msg* object. Compound strings must always be passed in by reference. A compound string passed by value will be treated as a simple string (see page 59). It is assumed that there is enough memory in the *msg* object to contain the new item.

void **Put** (Msg& msg, Word u, Word w)

[MsgPutWord]

Puts an untyped word at untyped word position u (first untyped word has position 0) in the msg object. It is assumed that the object contains at least u+1 untyped words.

void Put (Msg& msg, Word t, MapItem m)

[MsgPutMapItem]

void Put (Msg& msg, Word t, GrantItem g) [MsgPutGrantItem] [MsgPutSimplStringItem]void Put (Msg& msg, Word t, StringItem s) void **Put** (Msg& msg, Word t, StringItem& s) [MsgPutStringItem] void **Put** (Msg& msg, Word t, CtrlXferItem c) [MsgPutCtrlXferItem] Puts a typed item into the msg object, starting at typed word position t (first typed word has position 0). Compound strings must always be passed in by reference. A compound string passed by value will be treated as a simple string (see page 59). It is assumed that that the object has enough typed words to contain the new item. Word Get (Msg& msg, Word u) [MsgWord] void Get (Msg& msg, Word u, Word& w) [MsgGetWord] Delivers the untyped words at position u. It is assumed that the object contains at least u+1untyped words. Word Get (Msg& msg, Word t, MapItem& m) [MsgGetMapItem] Word Get (Msg& msg, Word t, GrantItem& g) [MsgGetGrantItem] Word Get (Msg& msg, Word t, StringItem& s) [MsgGetStringItem] Word Get (Msg& msg, Word t, CtrlXferItem& c) [MsgGetCtrlXferItem] Delivers the typed item starting at typed word position t. It is assumed that the requested item

is of the right size and type. Returns the size (in words) of the delivered item.

Low-Level MR Access

```
#include <|4/ipc.h>

void StoreMR (int i, Word& w)

void LoadMR (int i, Word w)

Delivers/sets MR _i.

void StoreMRs (int i, k, Word& [k] w)

void LoadMRs (int i, k, Word& [k] w)

Stores/loads MR _{i...i+k-1} to/from memory.
```

MAPITEM 55

5.2 MapItem [Data Type]

An *fpage* (see page 40) or IO fpage that should be mapped is sent to the mappee as part of a message. A map operation is a no-op within the same address space. The fpage is specified by a two-word descriptor:

snd fpage (28/60)		0 r w x	MR_{i+1}
snd base / 1024 _(22/54)	0 (6)	100C	MR_i

access rights rwx The effective access rights for the newly mapped page are calculated by bitwise AND-ing the access rights specified in the snd fpage and the access rights that the mapper itself has on that fpage. As such, the mapper can restrict the effective access rights but not widen them.

snd base

The send base specifies the semantics of the map operation if the size of the snd fpage is larger or smaller than the window in which the receiver is willing to accept a mapping (see page 62). If the size of the *snd fpage*, 2^s , is larger than the receive window, 2^r , the send base indicates which region of the *snd fpage* is transmitted. More precisely:

send region = fpage (
$$addr_s + 2^r k, 2^r$$
), for some $k \ge 0$:
 $addr_s + 2^r k \le addr_s + (snd base \mod 2^s) < addr_s + 2^r k + 2^r$

and where $addr_s$ is the base address of the snd fpage. If the size of the snd fpage, 2^s , is smaller than the receive window, 2^r , the send base indicates where in the receive window the snd fpage is mapped. More precisely:

receive region =
$$fpage (addr_r + 2^s k, 2^s)$$
, for some $k \ge 0$:
 $addr_r + 2^s k \le addr_r + (snd base \mod 2^r) < addr_r + 2^s k + 2^s$

and where $addr_r$ is the base address of the receive window.

Pages already mapped in the mappee's address space that would conflict with new mappings are implicitly unmapped before new pages are mapped. For performance reasons extension of access rights is possible without prior unmapping, iff the very same mapping already exists. This is the case, when

- the mapper maps from the same address space as the existing mapping; and
- the mapper maps from the same virtual source address as the existing mapping; and
- the mapper maps to the same virtual destination address as the existing mapping; and
- the object (physical address) is the same as the existing mapping.

Access rights can not be revoked by mapping. The access rights of the resulting mapping are a bitwise OR of the existing and the new mapping's access rights. Access rights are not extended recursively.

Generic Programming Interface

#include <I4/ipc.h>

struct MAPITEM { Word raw [2] }

MapItem MapItem (Fpage f, Word SndBase)

Delivers a map item with the specified fpage and send base.

56 MAPITEM

Bool MapItem (MapItem m) [IsMapItem]

Delivers true if map item is valid. Otherwise delivers false.

FpageSndFpage(MapItemSndFpage)WordSndBase(MapItem m)[MapItemSndBase]

Delivers fpage/send base of map item.

GRANTITEM 57

5.3 GrantItem [Data Type]

An *fpage* (see page 40) or IO fpage that should be granted is sent to the mappee as part of a message. It is specified by a two-word descriptor:

snd fpage (28/60)		0 r w x	MR_{i+1}
snd base / 1024 (22/54)	0 (6)	101C	$MR_{\;i}$

access rights rwx The effective access rights for the granted page are calculated by bitwise anding the access rights specified in the snd fpage and the access rights that the mapper itself has on that fpage. As such, the granter can restrict the effective access rights but not widen them.

snd base

The send base specifies the semantics of the map operation if the size of the snd fpage is larger or smaller than the window in which the receiver is willing to accept a mapping (see page 62). If the size of the *snd fpage*, 2^s , is larger than the receive window, 2^r , the send base indicates which region of the *snd fpage* is transmitted. More precisely:

send region = fpage (
$$addr_s + 2^r k, 2^r$$
), for some $k \ge 0$:
 $addr_s + 2^r k \le addr_s + (snd base \mod 2^s) < addr_s + 2^r k + 2^r$

and where $addr_s$ is the base address of the snd fpage. If the size of the snd fpage, 2^s , is smaller than the receive window, 2^r , the send base indicates where in the receive window the $snd\ fpage$ is mapped. More precisely:

receive region = fpage (
$$addr_r + 2^s k, 2^s$$
), for some $k \ge 0$:
 $addr_r + 2^s k \le addr_r + (snd base \mod 2^r) < addr_r + 2^s k + 2^s$

and where $addr_r$ is the base address of the receive window.

Pages already mapped in the grantee's address space that would conflict with new mappings are implicitly unmapped before new pages are mapped.

Generic Programming Interface

#include <I4/ipc.h>

struct GRANTITEM { Word raw [2] }

GrantItem GrantItem (Fpage f, Word SndBase)

Delivers a grant item with the specified fpage and send base.

Bool GrantItem (GrantItem g)

[IsGrantItem]

Delivers true if grant item is valid. Otherwise delivers false.

Fpage **SndFpage** (GrantItem g)

[GrantItemSndFpage]

Word SndBase (GrantItem g)

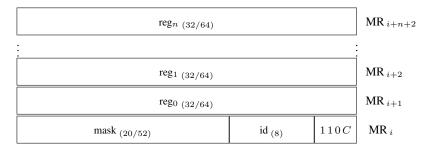
[GrantItemSndBase]

Delivers fpage/send base of grant item.

58 CTRLXFERITEM

5.4 CtrlXferItem [Data Type]

A control transfer item specifies a control state such as instruction pointer, stack pointer, or general-purpose registers for the receiver of the message. The new values are automatically set by the kernel upon receiving the item. The contents of a control transfer item are architecture-specific. In general, a control transfer item is specified as follows:



id An identifier specifying the set of control transfer registers set by this item. Identifiers are architecture specific.

mask A bitmask specifying the registers in the set to be modified.

Generic Programming Interface

#include <l4/ipc.h>

struct CTRLXFERITEM { Word raw [*] }

Bool CtrlXferItem (CtrlXferItem& c)

[IsCtrlXferItem]

Delivers true if control transfer item is valid. Otherwise delivers false.

void CtrlXferItemInit (CtrlXferItem& c, Word id)

Initializes the control transfer item with given id.

STRINGITEM 59

5.5 StringItem [Data Type]

A string item specifies a sequence of bytes in user space. No alignment is required, the maximal string size is 4 MB. In send messages, such a string is copied to the receiver buffer when transferring the message. String items are also used to specify receive buffers in buffer registers on the receiver's side.

Simple String

A simple string is a contiguous sequence of bytes.

	string ptr (32/64)			MR_{i+1}	
	string length (22/54)	0	0 (5)	0 h h C	MR_i
string ptr	The start address of the string to be sent or the start address of the buffer for receiving a string (no alignment restrictions). However, the string/buffer must fit entirely into the legally addressable user space.				
string length	The length of the string to be sent or the size of the receive buffer. In the second case, strings up to (including) this length can be received. Maximum string length is 4 M bytes, even if the according field is 54 bits wide on 64-bit processors.				
h h	Cacheability hint. Except for $hh=00$, the semantics of this parameter depends on the processor type (see Appendices A.6 and \ref{A}).				
hh = 00	Use the processor's default cacheability strate read and written (assuming that the processor's				

Compound String

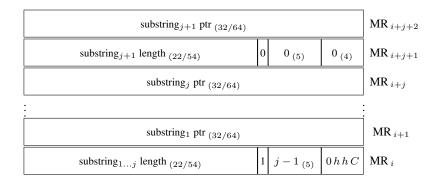
A compound string is a noncontiguous string that consists of multiple contiguous substrings which can be scattered around the entire user address space. The substrings must not overlap. For send and receive IPC operations, a compound string is handled as a single logical string. When sending such a string through IPC, the substrings are transferred as if they were one contiguous string (gather). On the receiver side, a compound string buffer is treated as one logical buffer. The corresponding received string is scattered among the compound buffer's substrings.

A compound string can be specified as a sequence of substrings where each substring has the form of a simple string except that the *continuation* flag c is set for all but the last substring. If j subsequent substrings have the same size, e.g., for equally sized buffers, a single length word can be used for all j substrings so that only j+1 words instead of 2j words are required.

length word	
	The type information $0hhC$ is only required for the first word of a string descriptor. The field is ignored for further length words in a compound-string descriptor.
j	Number of subsequent string-ptr words. These string ptrs specify j substrings that have all the same substring length.
c = 0	Continuation flag reset. The compound string descriptor ends with the j^{th} string ptr word following the current length word.
c = 1	Continuation flag set. The current length word and j string-ptr words are followed by (at least) one substring descriptor, i.e., another length word, etc.

60 STRINGITEM

Example



Generic Programming Interface

#include <l4/ipc.h>

struct StringItem { Word raw [*] }

Bool StringItem (StringItem&s)

[IsStringItem]

Delivers true if string item is valid. Otherwise delivers false.

Bool CompoundString (StringItem& s)

Delivers the c-flag value (true = set).

Word **Substrings** (StringItem& s)

void* Substring (StringItem& s, Word n)

Delivers number of substrings/address of nth substring.

StringItem StringItem (int size, void* address)

Delivers a simple string item with the specified size and location.

StringItem & += (StringItem & dest, StringItem AdditionalSubstring)

[AddSubstringTo]

Append substring to the string item. It is assumed that there is enough memory in the string item

to contain the new substring.

StringItem & += (StringItem& dest, void*AdditionalSubstringAddress)

[Add Substring Address To]

Append a new substring pointer to the string item. It is assumed that there is enough memory in

the string item to contain the new substring pointer.

Convenience Programming Interface

Support Functions:

#include <l4/ipc.h>

struct CacheAllocationHint { Word raw }

CacheAllocationHint UseDefaultCacheLineAllocation

STRINGITEM 61

 $Bool == (CacheAllocationHint \ l, r)$ [IsCacheAllocationHintEqual] $Bool \ != (CacheAllocationHint \ l, r)$ [IsCacheAllocationHintNotEqual]

CacheAllocationHint CacheAllocationHint (StringItem s)

Delivers the cache allocation hint of the string item.

Compares two cache allocation hints.

StringItem + (StringItem s, CacheAllocationHint h) [AddCacheAllocationHint]
StringItem += (StringItem s, CacheAllocationHint h) [AddCacheAllocationHintTo]

Adds a cache allocation hint to a string item. An already existing hint is overwritten.

5.6 String Buffers And Buffer Registers (BRs) [Pseudo Registers]

For receiving messages that contain string items, the receiver has to specify appropriate string buffers. Such buffers are described by string items (see page 59). A buffer can be contiguous (simple string) or non-contiguous (compound string).

Such buffer descriptors are held in 33 per-thread Buffer Registers BR $_{0...32}$. The number of buffer registers is sufficient to specify, for example, one compound buffer of 31 equally-sized sub-buffers. Up to 16 buffers can be specified provided that not more than 33 BRs are required.

When a message is received, the first message string item is copied into the first buffer string item which starts at BR $_1$; the next message string item is copied to the next buffer string item, etc. The list of buffer strings is terminated by having the C bit in the item type specifier of the last string zeroed.

BRs are *registers* in the sense that they are per-thread objects and can only be addressed directly, not indirectly through pointers. BRs are static objects like TCRs, i.e., they keep their values until explicitly modified. BRs can be mapped to either special registers or to memory locations.

Acceptor [BR ₀]	RcvWindow (28/60)	00cs			
RcvWindow	BR $_0$ specifies which typed items are accepted when a message is received. Fpage (without access bits) that specifies the address-space window in which mappings and grants are accepted. $Nilpage$ denies any mapping or granting; $CompleteAddressSpace$ accepts any mapping or granting.				
c	Control transfer items are accepted iff $c=1$.				
8	StringItems are accepted iff $s=1$.				
buffer string items	${\bf [BR_{1}]}$ contain the valid buffer string items. Ignored if $s=0$ in BR $_{0}$.				

Generic Programming Interface

The listed generic functions permit user code to access buffer registers independently of the processor-specific BR model. All functions are user-level functions; the microkernel is not involved.

Acceptor

```
#include <|4/ipc.h>

struct Acceptor { Word raw }

Acceptor UntypedWordsAcceptor

Acceptor StringItemsAcceptor

Acceptor CtrlXferItemsAcceptor

Acceptor MapGrantItems (Fpage RcvWindow)

Delivers an acceptor which allows untyped words, string items, or mappings and grants.

Acceptor + (Acceptor l, r) [AddAcceptor]

Acceptor += (Acceptor l, r) [AddAcceptorTo]

Adds mappings/grants or string items to an acceptor. Adding a non-nil receive window will
```

replace an existing window.

```
Acceptor - (Acceptor l, r)
                                                                                            [RemoveAcceptor]
Acceptor -= (Acceptor l, r)
                                                                                       [RemoveAcceptorFrom]
                  Removes mappings/grants or string items from an acceptor. Removing a non-nil receive window
                   will deny all mappings or grants, regardless of the size of the receive window.
Bool StringItems (Acceptor a)
                                                                                             [HasStringItems]
Bool MapGrantItems (Acceptor a)
                                                                                         [HasMapGrantItems]
                  Checks whether string items/mappings are allowed.
Fpage RcvWindow (Acceptor a)
                  Delivers the address space window where mappings and grants are accepted. Delivers nilpage
                  if mappings or grants are not allowed.
void Accept (Acceptor a)
                  Sets BR 0.
void Accept (Acceptor a, MsgBuffer& b)
                                                                                               [AcceptStrings]
                  Sets BR _0 and loads the buffer description b into BR _1....
Acceptor Accepted ()
                  Delivers BR<sub>0</sub>.
```

Convenience Programming Interface

MsgBuffer

```
#include <|4/ipc.h>

struct MsgBuffer& { Word raw[32] }

void Clear (MsgBuffer& b) [MsgBufferClear]

Clears the message buffer (i.e., inserts a single empty string into it).

void Append (MsgBuffer& b, StringItem s) [MsgBufferAppendSimpleRcvString]

void Append (MsgBuffer& b, StringItem * s) [MsgBufferAppendRcvString]

Appends a string buffer to the message buffer. Compound strings must always be passed in by reference. A compound string passed by value will be treated as a simple string. It is assumed that there is enough memory in the message buffer object to contain the new string buffer.
```

Low-Level BR Access

```
#include <|4/ipc.h>

void StoreBR (int i, Word& w)

void LoadBR (int i, Word w)

Delivers/sets the value of BR _i.

void StoreBRs (int i, k, Word& [k])

void LoadBRs (int i, k, Word& [k])

Stores/loads BR _{i...i+k-1} to/from memory.
```

Code generators of IDL and other compilers are not restricted to the generic interface. They can use any processor-specific methods and optimizations to access BRs.

5.7 **IPC** [Systemcall]

ThreadId to ── ThreadId from ThreadId FromSpecifier Word Timeouts

IPC is the fundamental operation for inter-process communication and synchronization. It can be used for intra- and inter-address-space communication. All communication is synchronous and unbuffered: a message is transferred from the sender to the recipient if and only if the recipient has invoked a corresponding IPC operation. The sender blocks until this happens or until a period specified by the sender has elapsed without the destination becoming ready to receive.

IPC can be used to copy data as well as to *map* or *grant* fpages from the sender to the recipient. For the description of messages see page 50. A single IPC call combines an optional send phase followed by an optional receive phase. Which phases are included is determined by the parameters *to* and *FromSpecifier*. Transitions between send phase and receive phase are atomic.

Ipc operations are also controlled by MRs, BRs and some TCRs. *RcvTimeout* and *SndTimeout* are directly specified as system-call parameters. Each timeout can be $0, \infty$ (i.e., never expire), relative or absolute. For details on timeouts see page 30.

Variants

To enable implementation-specific optimizations, there exist two variants of the IPC system call. Functionally, both variants are identical. Transparently to the user, a kernel implementation can unify both variants or implement differently optimized functions.

IPC Default IPC function. Must always be used except if all criteria for using LIPC are fulfilled.

IPC function that may be optimized for sending messages to local threads. Should be used whenever it is absolutely clear that in the overwhelming majority of all invocations

- a send phase is included; and
- the destination thread is specified as a local thread ID; and
- a receive phase is included; and
- the destination thread runs on the same processor; and
- the RcvTimeout is ∞, and
- the IPC includes no map/grant operations.

Input Parameters

to = *nilthread* IPC includes no send phase.

to ≠ *nilthread* Destination thread; IPC includes a send phase

From Specifier = nilthread

LIPC

IPC includes no receive phase.

FromSpecifier = anythread

IPC includes a receive phase. Incoming messages are accepted from any thread (including hardware interrupts).

FromSpecifier = anylocalthread

IPC includes a receive phase. Incoming messages are accepted from any thread that resides in the current address space.

$From Specifier \neq nilthread, \neq anythread, \neq anylocal thread$

Ipc includes a receive phase. Incoming messages are accepted only from the specified thread. (Note that hardware interrupts can be specified.)

Timeouts	SndTimeout (16)	RcvTimeout (16)
	(10)	(10)

RcvTimeout

The receive phase waits until either a message transfer starts or the *RcvTimeout* expires. Ignored for send-only IPC operations.

For relative receive timeout values, the receive timeout starts to run *after* the send phase has successfully completed. If the receive timeout expires before the message transfer has been started IPC fails with "receive timeout". A pending incoming message *is* received if the timeout period is 0.

SndTimeout

If the send timeout expires before the message transfer could start the IPC operation fails with "send timeout". A send timeout of 0 ensures that IPC happens only if the addressed receiver is ready to receive when the send IPC operation is invoked. Otherwise, IPC fails immediately, i.e., without blocking.

MsgTag [MR₀]

u

p=1

label (16/48)	$0_{(3)}$ p	t (6)	$u_{(6)}$
---------------	---------------	-------	-----------

Message head of the message to be sent. Only the upper 16/48 bits are freely available. The lower 16 bits hold the *SndControl* parameter. It describes the message to be sent and contains some control bits; ignored if no send phase.

Number of untyped words following word 0. MR $_{1...u}$ hold the untyped words. u=0 denotes a message with no untyped words.

Number of words holding typed items that follow the untyped words (or the message tag if no untyped words are present). The typed items use MR $_{u+1}$ and following MRs, potentially up to MR $_{63}$. t=0 denotes a message without typed items.

p=0 Normal (unpropagated) send operation. The recipient gets the original sender's id.

Propagating send operation. The *VirtualSender* TCR specifies the id of the originator thread. (i.e., the thread to send the message on behalf of). If originator thread and current sender, or current sender and receiver reside in the same address space, propagation is always permitted. Otherwise, IPC occurs unpropagated. Propagation is also allowed if the originator thread is an interrupt thread waiting (closed) for the current thread, or if the current sender is a redirector for the originator thread (or there exists a chain of redirectors from the originator to the current sender).

If propagation is permitted, the receiver receives the originator's id instead of the current sender's id, the *p* bit in the receiver's MsgTag is set, and the current sender's id is stored in the receiver's *ActualSender* TCR. If the originator thread is waiting (closed) for a reply from the current sender, the originator's state is additionally modified so that it now waits for the new receiver instead of the current sender.

label Freely available, often used to specify the request type or invoked method, respectively.

 $[\mathbf{MR}_{1...u}]$ Untyped words to be sent. Ignored if no send phase.

 $[\mathbf{MR}_{u+1...u+t}]$ Typed items to be sent. Ignored if no send phase.

XferTimeouts [TCR]

XferTimeout Snd (16) XferTimeout Rcv (16)	
---	--

Once a message transfer has been started, the time for transferring the message is roughly bounded by the minimum of sender's and receiver's *XferTimeout*. "Roughly" means that xfer timeouts are only checked when message copy raises a pagefault in the sender's or in the receiver's address space. Copying data and mapping/granting is assumed to take no time. A relative transfer timeout always refers to the beginning of the message transfer (actually when the first page fault is raised). Logically, at that point it is transferred into an absolute timeout which then is used as send and receive timeout for the first and all subsequent page-fault RPCs in the message transfer.

If the effective transfer timeout expires during the message transfer, IPC fails with "xfer timeout" (on both sides). Additional information specifies whether the page fault was in the receiver's or in the sender's address space and which part of the message was already transferred. Each thread has two transfer timeouts. One for the send phase and one for the receive phase.

Acceptor [BR₀]

RcvWindow (28/60) 00 c s

BR₀ specifies which typed items are accepted when a message is received.

RcvWindow

Fpage (without access bits) that specifies the address-space window in which mappings and grants are accepted. *Nilpage* denies any mapping or granting; *CompleteAddressSpace* accepts any mapping or granting.

s StringItems are accepted iff s = 1.

c CtrlXferItems are accepted iff c = 1.

buffer string items [BR_{1...}]

contain the valid buffer string items. Ignored if s = 0 in BR $_0$.

Output Parameters

from

11.

Thread ID of the sender from which the IPC was received. Thread IDs are delivered as *local thread IDs* iff they identify a thread executing in the same address space as the current thread. It does not matter whether the sender specified the destination as local or global id. Only defined for IPC operations that include a receive phase.

MsgTag [MR₀]

label (16/48)	EXrp	t (6)	$u_{(6)}$
---------------	------	-------	-----------

If the IPC operation included a receive phase, MR $_{\rm 0}$ contains the message tag of the received message. The upper 16/48 bits contain the user-specified label. The lower bits describe the received message, contain the error indicator, and the cross-processor IPC indicator.

 MR_0 is defined even if the IPC operation did not include a receive phase. In the send-only case, MR_0 returns the error indicator.

Number of untyped words following word $0.\ u=0$ means no untyped words. For IPC operations without receive phase, u=0 is delivered.

Number of received words that hold typed items. t=0 means no typed items. For IPC operations without receive phase, t=0 is delivered.

Propagated IPC. If reset (p=0) the IPC was not propagated. If set (p=1) the IPC was propagated and the *FromSpecifier* indicates the originator thread's id. The *ActualSender* specifies the id of the thread which performed the propagation.

Redirected IPC. If reset (r=0) the IPC was not a redirected one. If set (r=1) the IPC was redirected to the current thread, and the *IntendedReceiver* TCR specifies the id of the thread supposed to receive the message.

supposed to receive the message.

X Cross-processor IPC. If reset (X=0) the received IPC came from a thread running on the same processor as the receiver. If set (X=1) the received IPC was cross-processor. For IPC operations without receive phase, X=0 is delivered.

E Error indicator. If reset (E=0) the IPC operation terminated successful.

If set (E=1) IPC failed. If the send phase was successful but a receive timeout occurred afterwards, or if a message could only be partially transferred, the entire IPC fails. The error code and additional information can be retrieved from the ErrorCode TCR. The fields label, t, and u are valid if the error code signals a partially received message.

label Label of the received message. For IPC operations without receive phase, the label is 0.

 $[\mathbf{MR}_{1...u}]$ Untyped words that have been received. Undefined if no receive phase.

 $[\mathbf{MR}_{u+1...u+k}]$ Typed items that have been received. Undefined if no receive phase.

ErrorCode [TCR]



Only defined if the error indicator E in MR_0 is set. IPC failed, i.e., was not correctly completed. The x field depends on the error code, see below. The p field specifies whether the error occurred during send or receive phase. If the error occurred during the receive phase the send phase (if any) was completed successfully before. If the error occurred during the send phase, the receive phase (if any) was skipped.

p Specifies whether the error occurred during the send phase (p = 0) or the receive phase (p = 1).

errors 1, 2,3



Error happened before a partner thread was involved in the message transfer. Therefore, the error is signaled only to the thread that invoked the failing IPC operation.

e = 1 Timeout.

From is undefined in this case.

e=2 Non-existing partner. If the error occurred in the send phase, to does not exist. (Anythread as a destination is illegal and will also raise this error.) If the error occurred in the receive phase, FromSpecifier does not exist. (FromSpecifier = anythread is legal, and thus will never raise this error.)

e = 3 Canceled by another thread (system call exchange registers).

errors 4,5,6,7



A partner thread is already involved in the IPC operation, and the error is therefore signaled to both threads.

offset

The message transfer has been started and could not be completed. The *offset* identifies exactly the number of bytes that have been been transferred successfully so far through string items.

e = 4 Message Overflow.

A message overflow can occur (1) if a receiving buffer string is too short, (2) if not enough buffer string items are present, and (4) if a map/grant of an fpage fails because the system has not enough page-table space available. The *offset* in conjunction with the received MRs permits sender and receiver to exactly determine the reason.

e = 5 Xfer timeout during page fault in the invoker's address space.

- e = 6 Xfer timeout during page fault in the partner's address space.
- e = 7 Aborted by another thread (system call exchange registers).

Pagefaults

Three different types of pagefault can occur during ipc: pre-send, post-receive, and xfer pagefaults. Only xfer pagefault are critical from a security point of view. Fortunately, messages without strings will never raise xfer pagefaults and need thus no special pagefault provisions:

Pre-send pagefaults

happen in the sender's context *before* the message transfer has really started. The destination thread is not involved; in particular, it is not locked. Therefore, the destination thread might receive another message or time out while the sender's pre-send pagefault is handled. Send and transfer timeouts do not control pre-send pagefaults. Pre-send pagefaults are uncritical from a security point of view, since only the sender's own pager is involved and only the sender could suffer from its potential misbehavior.

Post-receive pagefaults

happen in the receiver's context *after* the message has been transferred. The sender thread is no longer involved, especially, it is no longer locked. Consequently, post-receive pagefault are not subject to send and transfer timeouts. Like pre-send pagefaults, post-receive pagefaults are also uncritical from a security perspective since only the receiver and its pager are involved.

Xfer pagefaults

happen while the message is being transferred and both sender and receiver are involved. Therefore, xfer pagefaults are critical from a security perspective: If such a pagefault occurs in the receiver's space, the sender may be starved by a malicious receiver pager. An xfer pagefault in the sender's space and a malicious sender pager may starve the receiver. As such, xfer pagefaults are controlled by the minimum of sender's and receiver's xfer timeouts.

However, xfer pagefaults can only happen when transferring strings. Send messages without strings or receive messages without receive string buffers are guaranteed not to raise xfer pagefaults.

Generic Programming Interface

System-Call Function:

```
#include <|4/ipc.h>

MsgTag Ipc (ThreadId to, FromSpecifier, Word Timeouts, ThreadId& from)

MsgTag Lipc (ThreadId to, FromSpecifier, Word Timeouts, ThreadId& from)
```

Note that message registers have read-once semantics and that returning the message tag implies reading MR_0 . The contents of the message tag is therefore lost if the application does not implicitly store the return value of IPC or LIPC.

Convenience Programming Interface

Derived Functions:

```
#include <|4/ipc.h>

MsgTag Call (ThreadId to)
{ Call (to, never, never) }
```

```
MsgTag Call (ThreadId to, Time SndTimeout, RcvTimeout)
                                                                                             [Call_Timeouts]
                  { Ipc (to, to, Timeouts (SndTimeout, RcvTimeout), -) }
MsgTag Send (ThreadId to)
                  { Send (to, never) }
MsgTag Send (ThreadId to, Time SndTimeout)
                                                                                             [Send_Timeout]
                  { Ipc (to, nilthread, Timeouts (SndTimeout, -), -) }
MsgTag Reply (ThreadId to)
                  { Send (to, ZeroTime) }
MsgTag Receive (ThreadId from)
                  { Receive (from, never) }
MsgTag Receive (ThreadId from, Time RcvTimeout)
                                                                                           [Receive_Timeout]
                  { Ipc (nilthread, from, Timeouts (-, RcvTimeout), -) }
MsgTag Wait (ThreadId& from)
                  { Wait (never, from) }
MsgTag Wait (Time RcvTimeout, ThreadId& from)
                                                                                              [Wait_Timeout]
                  { Ipc (nilthread, anythread, Timeouts (-, RcvTimeout), from) }
MsgTag ReplyWait (ThreadId to, ThreadId& from)
                  { ReplyWait (to, never, from) }
MsgTag ReplyWait (ThreadId to, Time RcvTimeout, ThreadId& from)
                                                                                        [ReplyWait_Timeout]
                  { Ipc (to, anythread, Timeouts (TimePeriod(0), RcvTimeout), from) }
void Sleep (Time t)
                  { Set_MsgTag (Receive (MyLocalId, t)) }
MsgTag Lcall (ThreadId to)
                  { Lipc (to, to, Timeouts (never, never), -) }
MsgTag LreplyWait (ThreadId to, ThreadId& from)
                  { Lipc (to, anylocalthread, Timeouts (TimePeriod (0), never), from) }
```

Support Functions:

```
#include <|4/ipc.h>

Bool IpcSucceeded (MsgTag t)

Bool IpcFailed (MsgTag t)

Delivers the state of the error indicator (the E bit of MR 0).

Bool IpcPropagated (MsgTag t)

Bool IpcRedirected (MsgTag t)

Bool IpcXcpu (MsgTag t)

Checks if the IPC was propagated/redirected/cross cpu.

Word ErrorCode ()

ThreadId IntendedReceiver ()
```

ThreadId ActualSender ()

Delivers the error code/intended receiver TCR/actual sender.

void **Set_Propagation** (MsgTag& t)

Sets the propagation bit.

void **Set_VirtualSender** (ThreadId t)

Sets the virtual sender TCR.

Word Timeouts (Time SndTimeout, RcvTimeout)

Delivers a word containing both timeout values.

Chapter 6

Miscellaneous

72 EXCEPTIONHANDLER

6.1 ExceptionHandler [TCR]

An exception handler thread can be installed to receive exception IPCs.

ExceptionHandler

≠nilthread Specifies the exception handler thread. When a thread raises an exception the kernel sends an

exception IPC message on the thread's behalf to the thread's exception handler thread and waits for a response from the exception handler containing the instruction pointer where the thread should continue execution in MR $_{\rm 1}$. The format of the exception IPC message is architecture

specific.

The architectural registers of the faulting thread, BR 0, TCRs, and the MRs containing the ex-

ception message are preserved.

=nilthread No exception handler is specified. If an exception is raised the thread is halted and not scheduled

anymore. nilthread is the default value for newly created threads.

Generic Programming Interface

#include <l4/thread.h>

ThreadId ExceptionHandler ()

void Set_ExceptionHandler (ThreadId new)

Delivers/sets the exception handler TCR.

COP FLAGS 73

6.2 Cop Flags [TCR]

The coprocessor flags TCR helps the kernel to optimize thread switching for some hardware architectures.

Cop Flags



By resetting a c_i -bit to 0, a thread tells the system that it no longer needs coprocessor i. If the kernel finds $c_i=0$, it concludes that registers and state of coprocessor i do not have to be saved. However, the kernel ensures that the coprocessor can not be used as a covert channel between different address spaces.

Once a thread has reset bit c_i it *must* set c_i to 1 *before* it issues the next operation on coprocessor i. Otherwise, coprocessor registers and state might be arbitrarily modified while using it. Note that the c_i -bits are *write-only*. Reading them results in an undefined value. Upon thread creation, all c_i -bits are set to 1.

Generic Programming Interface

#include < I4/thread.h>

void Set_CopFlag (Word n)
void Clr_CopFlag (Word n)

Sets/clears coprocessor flag c_n .

74 PROCESSORCONTROL

6.3 PROCESSORCONTROL [Privileged Systemcall]

Word ProcessorNo → Word result Word InternalFrequency

Word ExternalFrequency

Word voltage

Control the internal frequency, external frequency, or voltage for a system processor.

Input Parameters

ProcessorNo Specifies the processor to control. Number must be a valid index into the processor descriptor array (see Kernel Interface Page, page 4).

All further input parameters have no effect if the supplied value is -1, ensuring that the corresponding value is *not* modified. The following description always refers to values $\neq -1$.

InternalFrequency Sets internal frequency for processor to the given value (in kHz).

ExternalFrequency

Sets external frequency for processor to the given value (in kHz).

voltage

Sets voltage for processor to the given value (in mV). A value of 0 shuts down the processor.

Output Parameters

result

The result is 1 if the operation succeeded, otherwise the result is 0 and the ErrorCode TCR indicates the failure reason.

ErrorCode [TCR] Set if result = 0. Undefined if $result \neq 0$.

= 1 No privilege. Current thread does not have privilege to perform operation.

Note that the active internal and external frequency of all processors are available to all threads via the kernel interface page.

Pagefaults

No pagefaults will happen.

PROCESSORCONTROL 75

Generic Programming Interface

System-Call Function:

#include <I4/misc.h>

 $Word\ \textit{ProcessorControl}\ \ (Word\ ProcessorNo,\ Internal Frequency,\ External Frequency,\ voltage)$

Convenience Programming Interface

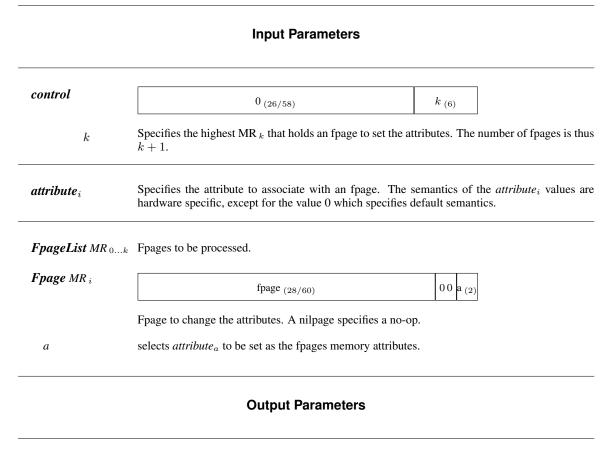
Support Functions:

Word ErrorCode ()
Word ErrNoPrivilege

76 MEMORYCONTROL

6.4 MEMORYCONTROL [Privileged Systemcall]

Set the page attributes of the fpages (MR 0...k) to the *attribute* specified with the fpage.



result

The result is 1 if the operation succeeded, otherwise the result is 0 and the ErrorCode TCR indicates the failure reason.

ErrorCode [TCR] Set if result = 0. Undefined if $result \neq 0$.

- = 1 No privilege. Current thread does not have privilege to perform operation.
- =5 Invalid parameter. Invalid or unsupported memory attribute.

Pagefaults

No pagefaults will happen.

MEMORYCONTROL 77

Generic Programming Interface

System-Call Function:

```
#include <|4/misc.h>

Word MemoryControl (Word control, Word& attributes[4])

Word DefaultMemory
```

Convenience Programming Interface

Derived Functions:

```
#include <|4/misc.h>

Word Set_PageAttribute (Fpage f, Word attribute)

{ Word attributes[0] = attribute; Set_Rights(f, 0); LoadMR (0, f); MemoryControl (0, &attributes); }

Word Set_PagesAttributes (Word n, Fpage& [n] fpages, Word& [4] attributes)

{ LoadMRs (0, n, fpages); MemoryControl (n - 1, attributes); }
```

Support Functions:

Word ErrorCode ()
Word ErrNoPrivilege
Word ErrInvalidParam

78 MEMORYCONTROL

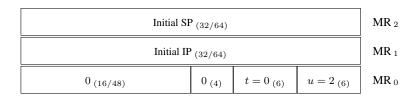
Chapter 7

Protocols

7.1 Thread Start Protocol [Protocol]

Newly created active threads start immediately by receiving a message from its pager. The received message contains the initial instruction-pointer and stack-pointer for the thread.

From Pager



INTERRUPT PROTOCOL 81

7.2 Interrupt Protocol [Protocol]

Interrupts are delivered as an IPC call to the interrupt handler thread (i.e., the pager of the interrupt thread). The interrupt is disabled until the interrupt handler sends a re-enable message.

From Interrupt Thread

$ \begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$		$-1_{(12/44)}$	0 (4)	0 (4)	$t = 0_{(6)}$	$u = 0_{(6)}$	MR
--	--	----------------	-------	-------	---------------	---------------	----

To Interrupt Thread

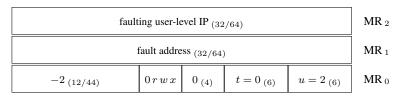
0 (16/48)	0 (4)	$t = 0_{(6)}$	$u = 0_{(6)}$	MR ₀
-----------	-------	---------------	---------------	-----------------

82 PAGEFAULT PROTOCOL

7.3 Pagefault Protocol [Protocol]

A thread generating a pagefault will cause the kernel to transparently generate a pagefault IPC to the faulting thread's pager. The behavior of the faulting thread is undefined if the pager does not exactly follow this protocol.





rwx

The rwx bits specify the fault reason:

 $egin{array}{ll} r & {
m read \ fault} \ w & {
m write \ fault} \ x & {
m execute \ fault} \end{array}$

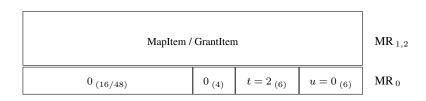
A bit set to one reports the type of the attempted access. On processors that do not differentiate between read and execute accesses, x is never set. Read and execute accesses will both be reported by the r bit.

Acceptor [BR₀]



The acceptor covers the complete user address space. The kernel accepts mappings or grants into this region on behalf of the faulting thread. The received message is discarded.

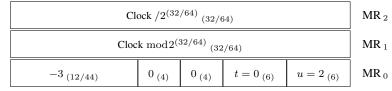
From Pager



PREEMPTION PROTOCOL 83

7.4 Preemption Protocol [Protocol]

From Preempted Thread



The preemption message contains the system clock when the thread was preempted. The preemption message is sent with relative timeout 0. If the message can not be delivered (e.g., due to timeouts) the message is dropped.

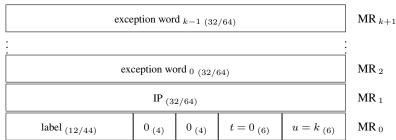
84 EXCEPTION PROTOCOL

7.5 Exception Protocol [Protocol]

The exception IPC contains a label, the faulting instruction pointer, and additional architecture specific exception words. The reply from the exception handler contains a label, an instruction pointer where the faulting thread is resumed, and an optional number of additional architecture specific words.

Note that the stack pointer is not explicitly specified to allow architecture specific optimizations.

To Exception Handler



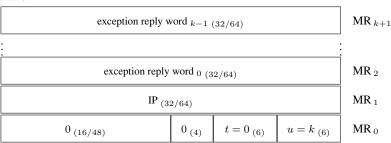
k Number of exception words.

label specifies the exception type.

= -4 System exceptions are defined for all architectures.

= -5 Architecture specific exceptions.

From Exception Handler



k Number of exception reply words.

IP Location where execution is resumed in the faulting thread.

7.6 Extended Control Transfer Protocol [Protocol]

To facilitate building L4-based virtualization solutions, the kernel can be configured to include extended control transfer state for kernel-generated messages, that is, for thread startups, pagefaults, exceptions, preemptions, and all other, architecture-specific types of messages.

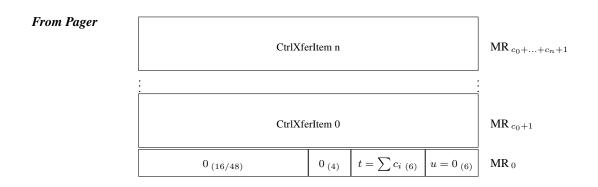
Configuring default control transfer state

By default, the kernel will use the protocols specified in the previous sections. Upon request, the kernel will switch to an extended protocol based on control transfer items. Requests to enable/disable the extended protocol are performed using the Exchangeredisters system call and appropriate control transfer configuration items CtrlXferConfItem (CtrlXferConfItem, see Section 2.3).

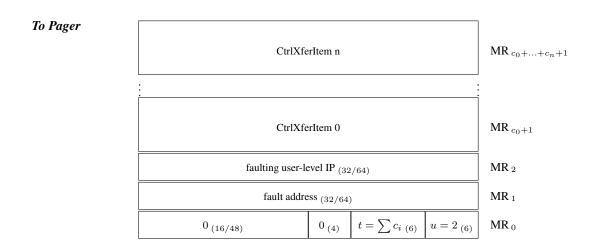
CtrlXfer Item based kernel message protocol

Extended Thread Start Protocol

Newly created active threads start immediately by receiving a message from its pager. The received message contains one or more control transfer items:



Extended Pagefault Protocol

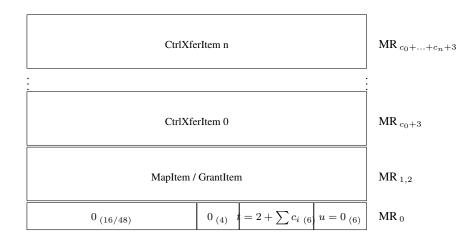




0 (22/54)	$s = 1_{(6)}$	0010	BR ₀
-----------	---------------	------	-----------------

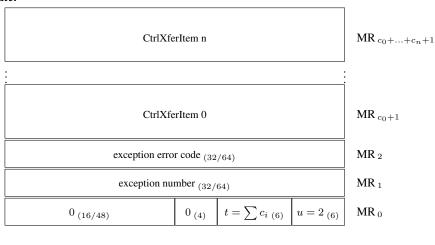
The acceptor covers the complete user address space and accepts all control transfer items. The kernel accepts mappings or grants into this region on behalf of the faulting thread, and sets the thread state based upon the control transfer items enclosed in the reply message. The received message is discarded.

From Pager



Extended Exception Protocol

To Exception Handler



Acceptor [BR₀]

0 (22/54)	$s = 1_{(6)}$	0010	BR ₀
-----------	---------------	------	-----------------

The acceptor covers the complete user address space and accepts all control transfer items. The kernel accepts mappings or grants into this region on behalf of the faulting thread, and sets the thread state based upon the control transfer items enclosed in the reply message. The received message is discarded.

From Exception Handler

CtrlXferItem n	$MR_{c_0++c_n+3}$
: CtrlXferItem 0	MR_{c_0+3}
MapItem / GrantItem	MR _{1,2}
$0_{(16/48)} \qquad 0_{(4)} t = 2 + \sum_{i \in [6]} u = 0_{(6)}$	MR ₀

Extended Preemption Protocol

To Scheduler

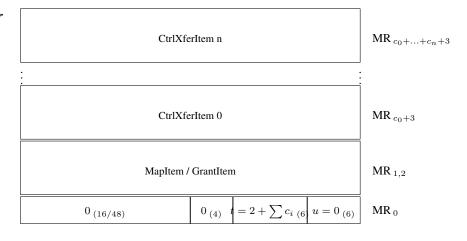
CtrlXferItem n	$MR_{c_0++c_n+1}$
:	
CtrlXferItem 0	MR_{c_0+1}
Clock /2 ^(32/64) (32/64)	MR ₂
Clock $\bmod 2^{(32/64)}$ (32/64)	MR 1
$0_{(16/48)} \qquad 0_{(4)} t = \sum c_{i (6)} u = 2_{(6)}$	MR ₀
	•

Acceptor [BR₀]

$0_{\ (22/54)}$	$s = 1_{(6)}$	0010	BR ₀

The acceptor covers the complete user address space and accepts all control transfer items. The kernel accepts mappings or grants into this region on behalf of the faulting thread, and sets the thread state based upon the control transfer items enclosed in the reply message. The received message is discarded.

From Scheduler



SIGMA0 RPC PROTOCOL 89

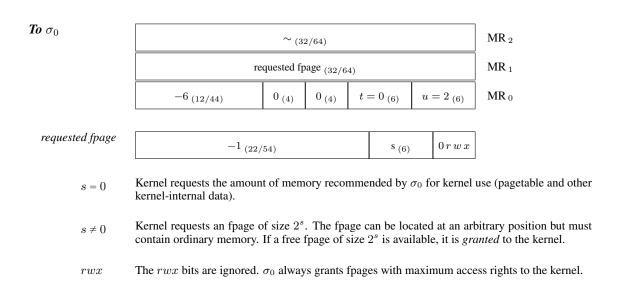
7.7 Sigma0 RPC protocol [Protocol]

 σ_0 is the initial address space. Although it is *not* part of the kernel, its basic protocol is defined with the kernel. Specific σ_0 implementations may extend this protocol.

The address space σ_0 is idempotent, i.e., all virtual addresses in this address space are identical to the corresponding physical address. Note that pages requested from σ_0 continue to be mapped idempotently if the receiver specifies its complete address space as receive fpage.

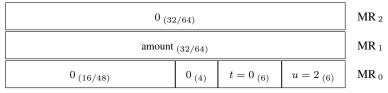
 σ_0 gives pages to the kernel and to arbitrary tasks, but only once. The idea is that all pagers request the memory they need in the startup phase of the system so that afterwards σ_0 has exhausted all its memory. Further requests will then automatically be denied.

Kernel Protocol

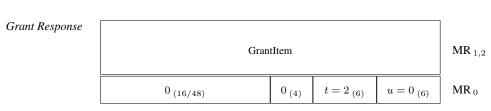


From σ_0

Kernel memory recommendation

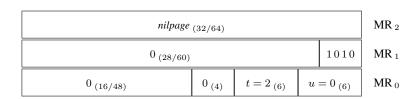


amount Amount of memory recommended for kernel use (in bytes).



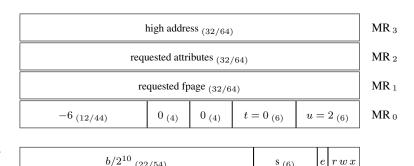
90 SIGMA0 RPC PROTOCOL

Grant Reject



User Protocol

To σ_0



requested fpage

, (22/04)		(0)				
σ_0 deals with fnages of arbitrary size	A succes	sful respons	e f	from σ	o contains	an fr

physically contiguous memory.

S (6)

- Requests the specific fpage with base address b and size 2^s . If the fpage is neither owned by the $b \neq -1$ kernel nor by a user thread (not even partially), the requested fpage is mapped to the requestor's address space and the fpage is marked as owned by the requesting thread (i.e., fpage is not marked as being owned by the address space in which thread resides). Any fpage not belonging to reserved memory (see page 93) can be requested. If the requested fpage is already owned by the requestor only the page attributes are modified. No new mapping operation happens.
- Requests an fpage of size 2^s but with arbitrary address. If a free fpage of size 2^s is available, b = -1it is mapped to the requestor's address space and marked as owned by the requesting thread (i.e., fpage is *not* marked as being owned by the address space in which thread resides). σ_0 is free to use the requested-attribute for choosing a best fitting page. Only fpages belonging to conventional memory (see page 93) are considered free and handed out upon such anonymous requests.
- Setting this bit to 1 instructs σ_0 to map an address longer than the usual address size of the system e(e.g. a 64 bit address on a 32 bit system). In this case, the lowermost bits of the requested address are specified as ususal in the requested fpage field, while the highermost bits are specified in a separate message register (see high address below).
- The rwx bits are ignored. σ_0 always maps fpages with maximum access rights to the requestor. rwx

requested attributes

- The page is requested with default attributes. =0
- $\neq 0$ The page is requested with some architecture dependent attributes.

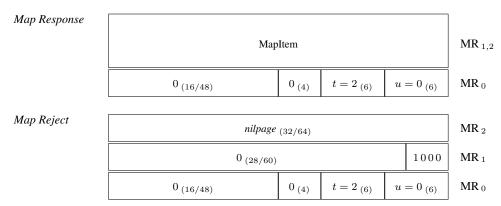
high address

this field contains the part of the requested address that didn't fit in the requested fpage field. σ_0 concatenates this field with the base address of the requested fpage field and then tries to map the result into the requesters address space. Note that this field will not be included in the response's MapItem.

This field is only read if the *e* bit is set to 1. If the *e* bit is 0, this field is ignored.

From σ_0

SIGMA0 RPC PROTOCOL 91

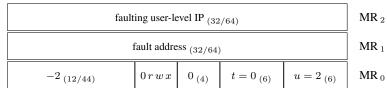


 σ_0 responds with a *map reject* message if the page is reserved (i.e., kernel space) or already mapped to a different thread, or if memory is exhausted.

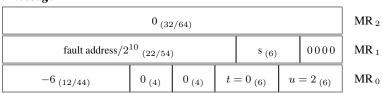
Pagefault Protocol

 σ_0 also understands the pagefault protocol (see page 82) and will convert pagefault requests into σ_0 user protocol requests. Further, only memory marked as *conventional memory* (see page 93) can be requested using the pagefault protocol. Any non-conventional memory (including boot loader specific memory) must be requested explicitly using the regular σ_0 protocol.

Incoming pagefault message



Converted pagefault message



The minimum supported page size as defined by the PageInfo field in the kernel interface page (see page 3).

92 GENERIC BOOTING

7.8 Generic Booting [Protocol]

Machine-specific boot procedures are described on pages 112 ff.

After booting, L4 initializes itself. It generates the basic address space-servers σ_0 , σ_1 and a *root server* which is intended to boot the higher-level system.

 σ_0 , σ_1 and the *root server* are user-level servers and not part of the pure kernel. The predefined ones can be replaced by modifying the following table in the L4 image before starting L4. An empty area specifies that the corresponding server should not be started. Note, that σ_0 is a mandatory service. The kernel debugger *kdebug* is also not part of the kernel and can accordingly be replaced by modifying the table.

		Memo	MemDescPtr	
~	BootInfo		+B0 / +160	
	~			
	~			
	~			
	~			+70 / +E0
	~			+60 / +C0
Kdebug.config1	Kdebug.config0	MemoryInfo	~	+50 / +A0
root server.high	root server.low	root server.IP	root server.SP	+40 / +80
σ_1 .high	$\sigma_1.\mathrm{low}$	$\sigma_1. ext{IP}$	$\sigma_1.{ m SP}$	+30 / +60
σ_0 .high	$\sigma_0.\mathrm{low}$	σ_0 .IP	$\sigma_0.{ m SP}$	+20 / +40
Kdebug.high	Kdebug.low	Kdebug.entry	Kdebug.init	+10 / +20
	~	API Version	~ _(0/32) 'K' 230 '4' 'L'	+0
+C / +18	+8 / +10	+4 / +8	+0	

The addresses are offsets relative to the configuration page's base address. The configuration page is located at a page boundary and can be found by searching for the magic " $L4\mu K$ " starting at the load address. The IP and SP values however, are absolute addresses. The appropriate code must be loaded at these addresses before L4 is started.

IP Physical address of a server's initial instruction pointer (start).

SP Physical address of a server's initial stack pointer (stack bottom).

Kdebug.init Physical address of *kdebug*'s initialization routine.

GENERIC BOOTING 93

Kdebug.entry

Physical address of kdebug's exception handler entry point.

Kdebug.low

Physical address of first byte of kernel debugger. Must be page aligned.

Kdebug.high

Physical address of last byte of kernel debugger. Must be the last byte in page.

Kdebug.config

Configuration fields which can be freely interpreted by the kernel debugger. The specific semantics of these fields are provided with the specific kernel debuggers.

BootInfo

Prior to kernel initialization a boot loader can write an arbitrary value into this field. Post-initialization code, e.g., a root server can later read the field. Its value is neither changed nor interpreted by the kernel. This is the generic method for passing system information across kernel initialization.

MemoryInfo

MemDescPtr

Location of first memory descriptor (as an offset relative to the configuration page's base address). Subsequent memory descriptors are located directly following the first one. For memory descriptors that specify overlapping memory regions, later descriptors take precedence over earlier ones.

n

Initially equals the number of available memory descriptors in the configuration page. Before starting L4 this number must be initialized to the number of inserted memory descriptors.

MemoryDesc

$high/2^{10}\ _{(22/54)}$	~ (10)			+4 / +8	
$low/2^{10}_{\ (22/54)}$	v	V	t (4)	$type_{(4)}$	+0

Memory descriptors should be initialized before starting L4. The kernel may after startup insert additional memory descriptors or modify existing ones (e.g., for reserved kernel memory).

high

Address of last byte in memory region. The ten least significant address bits are all hardwired to 1.

low

Address of first byte in memory region. The ten least significant address bits are all hardwired to 0.

v

Indicates whether memory descriptor refers to physical memory (v=0) or virtual memory (v=1).

type

t

Identifies the type of the memory descriptor.

Type	Description
0x0	Undefined
0x1	Conventional memory
0x2	Reserved memory (i.e., reserved by kernel)
0x3	Dedicated memory (i.e., memory not available to user)
0x4	Shared memory (i.e., available to all users)
0xE	Defined by boot loader
0xF	Architecture dependent

Identifies the precise type for boot loader specific or architecture dependent memory descriptors.

94 GENERIC BOOTING

type = 0xE

The type of the memory descriptor is dependent on the bootloader. The t field specifies the exact semantics. Refer to boot loader specification for more info.

type=0xF

The type of the memory descriptor is architecture dependent. The t field specifies the exact semantics. Refer to architecture specific part for more info (see page $\ref{eq:total_part}$).

 $type \neq 0xE$, $type \neq 0xF$

The type of the memory descriptor is solely defined by the type field. The content of the t field is undefined.

Appendix A

IA-32 Interface

96 VIRTUAL REGISTERS

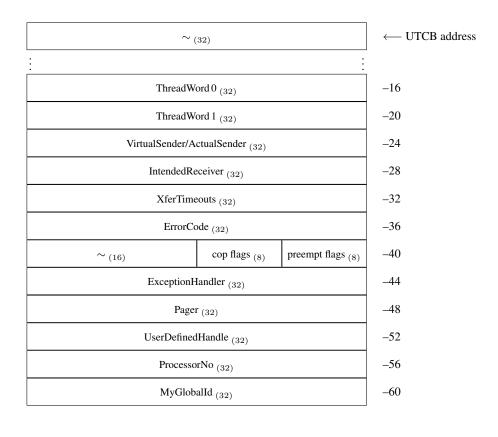
A.1 Virtual Registers [ia32]

Thread Control Registers (TCRs)

TCRs are implemented as part of the ia32-specific user-level thread control block (UTCB). The address of the current thread's UTCB will not change over the lifetime of the thread. Setting the UTCB address of an active thread via Thread-Control is similar to deletion and re-creation. There is a fixed correlation between the UtcbLocation parameter when invoking ThreadControl and the UTCB address. The UTCB address of the current thread can be loaded through a machine instruction

mov
$$\%$$
gs:[0], $\%$ r

UTCB objects of the current thread can then be accessed as any other memory object. UTCBs of other threads must not be accessed, even if they are physically accessible. ThreadWord0 and ThreadWord1 are free to be used by systems software (e.g., IDL compilers). The kernel associates no semantics with these words.





The TCR MyLocalId is not part of the UTCB. On ia32 it is identical with the UTCB address and can be loaded from memory location gs:[0].

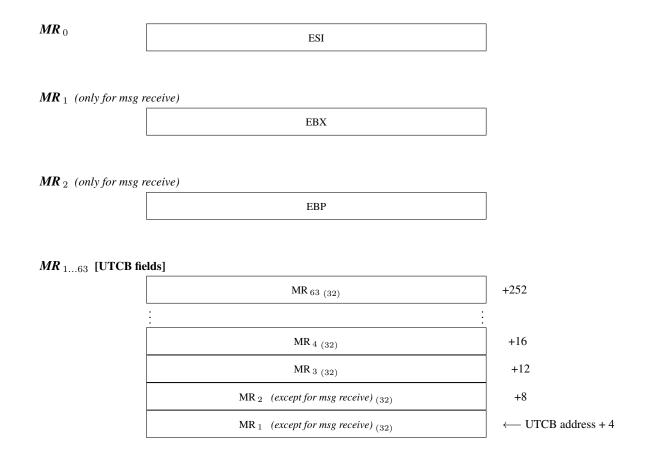
Message Registers (MRs)

Memory-mapped MRs are implemented as part of the ia32-specific user-level thread control block (UTCB). The address of the current thread's UTCB will not change over the lifetime of the thread. Setting the UTCB address of an active thread via ThreadControl is similar to deletion and re-creation. There is a fixed correlation between the UtcbLocation parameter when invoking ThreadControl and the UTCB address. The UTCB address of the current thread can be loaded through a machine instruction

mov
$$\%$$
gs:[0], $\%$ r

UTCB objects of the current thread can then be accessed as any other memory object. UTCBs of other threads must not be accessed, even if they are physically accessible.

MR $_0$ is always mapped to a general register. MR $_1$ and MR $_2$ are mapped to general registers when reading a received message; in all other cases, MR $_1$ and MR $_2$ are mapped to memory locations. MR $_{3...63}$ are always mapped to memory.

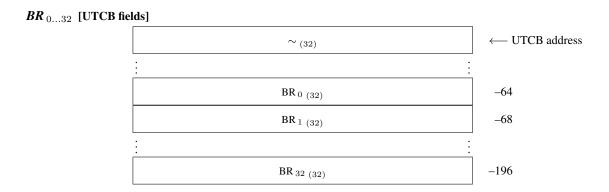


Buffer Registers (BRs)

BRs are implemented as part of the ia32-specific user-level thread control block (UTCB). The address of the current thread's UTCB will not change over the lifetime of the thread. Setting the UTCB address of an active thread via THREAD-CONTROL is similar to deletion and re-creation. There is a fixed correlation between the UtcbLocation parameter when invoking THREADCONTROL and the UTCB address. The UTCB address of the current thread can be loaded through a machine instruction

mov
$$\%$$
gs:[0], $\%$ r

UTCB objects of the current thread can then be accessed as any other memory object. UTCBs of other threads must not be accessed, even if they are physically accessible.



UTCB Memory With Undefined Semantics

The kernel will associate no semantics with memory located at UTCB address... UTCB address + 3. The application can use this memory as thread local storage, e.g., for implementing the L4 API. Note, however, that the memory contents within this region may be overwritten during a system-call operating on message registers.

All undefined UTCB memory which is not covered by the above mentioned region may have kernel defined semantics.

A.2 Systemcalls [ia32]

The system-calls which are invoked by the call instruction take the target of the calls from the system-call link fields in the kernel interface page (see page 2). Each system-call link specifies an address relative to the kernel interface page's base address. An application may use instructions other than call to invoke the system-calls, but must ensure that a valid return address resides on the stack.

KERNELINTERFACE [Slow Systemcall]

```
- \ KernelInterface \rightarrow
EAX
                                             base address
                                     EAX
                                             API Version
ECX
                                     ECX
                                             API Flags
EDX
                                     EDX
                lock: nop
                                     ESI
                                             Kernel ID
ESI
EDI
                                     EDI
EBX
                                     EBX
                                             \equiv
EBP
                                     EBP
                                             \equiv
ESP
                                     ESP
                                             \equiv
```

EXCHANGEREGISTERS [Systemcall]

dest	EAX	- Exchange Registers $ ightarrow$	EAX	result
control	ECX		ECX	control
SP	EDX		EDX	SP
IP	ESI	call ExchangeRegisters	ESI	IP
FLAGS	EDI		EDI	FLAGS
User De fined Handle	EBX		EBX	UserDefinedHandle
pager	EBP		EBP	pager
_	ESP		ESP	≡

[&]quot;FLAGS" refers to the user-modifiable ia32 processor flags that are held in the EFLAGS register.

THREADCONTROL [Privileged Systemcall]

```
- Thread Control \rightarrow
          dest
                 EAX
                                                    EAX
                                                           result
        Pager
                 ECX
                                                    ECX
    Scheduler
                 EDX
                                                    EDX
                           call ThreadControl
Space Specifier
                 ESI
                                                    ESI
 UtcbLocation
                 EDI
                                                    EDI
                 EBX
                                                    EBX
                 EBP
                                                    EBP
                 ESP
                                                    ESP
```

SYSTEMCLOCK [Systemcall]

THREADSWITCH [Systemcall]

```
- ThreadSwitch \rightarrow
dest
      EAX
                                             EAX
       ECX
                                             ECX
                                                    \equiv
       EDX
                                             EDX
                                                    \equiv
                   call ThreadSwitch
                                             ESI
       ESI
                                                    \equiv
       EDI
                                             EDI
                                                    \equiv
                                             EBX
       EBX
                                                    \equiv
                                             EBP
                                                    \equiv
       EBP
                                             ESP
       ESP
```

SCHEDULE [Systemcall]

dest	EAX	- Schedule $ ightarrow$	EAX	result
prio	ECX		ECX	\sim
time control	EDX		EDX	time control
processor control	ESI	call <i>Schedule</i>	ESI	\sim
preemption control	EDI		EDI	\sim
_	EBX		EBX	\sim
_	EBP		EBP	\sim
_	ESP		ESP	=

IPC [Systemcall]

m
R_0
R_1
R_2
ŀ

LIPC [Systemcall]

```
to
                EAX
                              -\ Lipc \rightarrow
                                                  EAX
                                                        from
    Timeouts
                ECX
                                                  ECX
                                                        \sim
From Specifier \\
                EDX
                                                  EDX
        MR_0
                ESI
                               call Lipc
                                                  ESI
                                                        MR_0
       UTCB
                EDI
                                                  EDI
                                                        \equiv
                                                        MR_{1}
                EBX
                                                  EBX
                                                  EBP
                                                        MR_2
                EBP
                ESP
                                                  ESP
```

UNMAP [Systemcall]

SPACECONTROL [Privileged Systemcall]

SpaceSpecifier	EAX	- Space Control $ ightarrow$	EAX	result
control	ECX		ECX	control
KernelInterfacePageArea	EDX		EDX	\sim
UtcbArea	ESI	call SpaceControl	ESI	\sim
Redirector	EDI		EDI	\sim
_	EBX		EBX	\sim
_	EBP		EBP	\sim
_	ESP		ESP	=

PROCESSORCONTROL [Privileged Systemcall]

ProcessorNo	EAX	$-\operatorname{\bf Processor}\operatorname{\bf Control}\to$	EAX	result
InternalFrequency	ECX		ECX	\sim
ExternalFrequency	EDX		EDX	\sim
voltage	ESI	call <i>ProcessorControl</i>	ESI	\sim
_	EDI		EDI	\sim
_	EBX		EBX	\sim
_	EBP		EBP	\sim
_	ESP		ESP	=

MEMORYCONTROL [Privileged Systemcall]

control	EAX	- Memory Control $ ightarrow$	EAX	result
$attribute_0$	ECX		ECX	\sim
$attribute_1$	EDX		EDX	\sim
MR_{0}	ESI	call <i>MemoryControl</i>	ESI	\sim
UTCB	EDI		EDI	\sim
$attribute_2$	EBX		EBX	\sim
$attribute_3$	EBP		EBP	\sim
_	ESP		ESP	\equiv

102 KERNEL FEATURES

A.3 Kernel Features [ia32]

The ia32 architecture supports the following kernel feature descriptors in the kernel interface page (see page 5).

String	Feature
"smallspaces"	Kernel has small address spaces enabled.

IO PORTS

A.4 IO Ports [ia32]

IO Fpages

On IA-32 processors, IO-ports are handled as fpages. IO fpages can be mapped, granted, and unmapped like memory fpages. Their minimal granularity is 1. An IO-fpage of size $2^{s'}$ has a $2^{s'}$ -aligned base address p, i.e. $p \mod 2^{s'} = 0$. An fpage with base port address p and size $2^{s'}$ is denoted as described below.

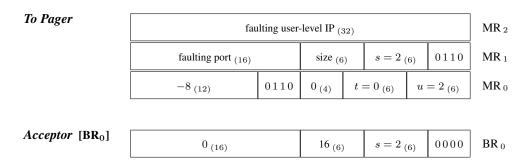
IO fpage
$$(p,2^{s'})$$

$$p_{(16)} \hspace{1cm} s'_{(6)} \hspace{1cm} s=2_{(6)} \hspace{1cm} 0\,1\,1\,0$$

IO-ports can only be mapped idempotently, i.e., physical port x is either mapped at IO address x in the task's IO address space, or it is not mapped at all. There are no distinct rights associated with IO ports, i.e., a task can be granted either read- and write-access to an IO port, ore none at all.

IO Pagefault Protocol

A thread generating an IO port exception will cause the kernel to transparently generate an IO-pagefault IPC to the faulting thread's pager. The behavior of the faulting thread is undefined if the pager does not exactly follow this protocol.



The acceptor covers the complete IO-address space. The kernel accepts mappings or grants into this region on behalf of the faulting thread. The received message is discarded.

Generic Programming Interface

```
#include <|4/arch.h>

Fpage IoFpage (Word BasePort, int FpageSize)

Fpage IoFpageLog2 (Word BasePort, int Log2FpageSize <= 16)

Delivers an IO fpage with the specified location and size.

Word IoFpagePort (Fpage f)

Word IoFpageSize (Fpage f)

Delivers port/size of specified IO fpage.

Bool IsIoFpage (Fpage f)

Delivers true if fpage is an IO fpage.
```

104 SPACE CONTROL

A.5 Space Control [ia32]

The SPACECONTROL system call has an architecture dependent *control* parameter to specify various address space characteristics. For ia32, the *control* parameter has the following semantics.

Input Parameters

control



A value of 1 indicates the intention to change the *small address space number* for the specified address space. The small space number will remain unchanged if s = 0.

A value of 1 instructs the kernel to add an entry to the translation table for extended mappings. This table allows mapping of memory addresses longer than 32 bits on 32-bit systems. The desired mapping is specified in the remaining parameters of the SpaceControl system call as follows: The redirector field must contain the highest 32 bits of the desired address, while the utcb_area field must contain the lower 32 bits. The kip_area field contains a regular fpage, which specifies a region of 32 bit addresses that should be mapped to a 64 bit address. If any address in this fpage is mapped to a thread, the address will be translated to the corresponding 64 bit address. If the mapping is successfull, the translation table entry is deleted.

small

If s=1, sets the small address space number for the specified address space. Small address space numbers from 1 to 255 are available. A value of 0 indicates a regular large address space. An assigned small space number is effective on *all* CPUs in an SMP system.

The position (pos) of the least significant bit of *small* indicates the size of the small space by the following formula: $size = 2^{pos} * 4$ MB. After removing the least significant bit, the remaining bits of *small* indicate the location of the space within a 512 MB region using the following formula: location = small * 2 MB. Setting the small space number fails if the specified region overlaps with an already existing one.

The *small* field is ignored if s=0, or if the kernel does not support small spaces (see Kernel Features, page 102).

Output Parameter

control

Indicates if the change of small space number was effective (e = 1). Undefined if s = 0 in the input parameter.

Indicates if an entry was successfully added to the kernel's translation table for extended mappings.

small

The old value for the small space number. A value of 0 is possible even if the space has previously been put into a small address space. An implicit change to small space number 0 can happen if a thread within the space accesses memory beyond the specified small space size.

Generic Programming Interface

#include <l4/space.h>

SPACE CONTROL 105

Word LargeSpace

Word SmallSpace (Word location, size)

Delivers a small space number with the specified *location* and *size* (both in MB). It is assumed that $size = 2^p * 4$ for some value p < 8.

106 CACHEABILITY HINTS

A.6 Cacheability Hints [ia32]

String items can specify cacheability hints to the kernel (see page 59). For ia32, the cacheability hints have the following semantics.

hh=00 Use the processor's default cacheability strategy. Typically, cache lines are allocated for data read and written (assuming that the processor's default strategy is write-back and write-allocate).

hh=01 Allocate cache lines in the entire cache hierarchy for data read or written.

hh=10 Do not allocate new cache lines (entire cache hierarchy) for data read or written.

hh=11 Allocate only new L1 cache line for data read or written. Do not allocate cache lines in lower cache hierarchies.

Convenience Programming Interface

#include <l4/ipc.h>

 ${\it Cache Allocation Hint \ Use Default Cache Line Allocation}$

CacheAllocationHint AllocateNewCacheLines

CacheAllocationHint DoNotAllocateNewCacheLines
CacheAllocationHint AllocateOnlyNewL1CacheLines

MEMORY ATTRIBUTES 107

A.7 Memory Attributes [ia32]

The ia32 architecture in general supports the following memory attributes values.

attribute	value
Default	0
Write Back	1
Write Through	2
Uncacheable	4
Write Combining	5
Write Protected	8

Note that some attributes are only supported on certain processors. See the "IA-32 Intel Architecture Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3: System Programming Guide" for the semantics of the memory attributes and which processors they are supported on.

Generic Programming Interface

#include <I4/misc.h>

Word DefaultMemory

Word WriteBackMemory

Word WriteThroughMemory

Word UncacheableMemory

Word WriteCombiningMemory

Word WriteProtectedMemory

A.8 Exception Message Format [ia32]

To Exception Handler

EAX (32)	MR 1
ECX (32)	MR ₁
EDX (32)	MR 1
EBX (32)	MR 9
ESP (32)	MR 8
EBP (32)	MR 7
ESI (32)	MR 6
EDI (32)	MR 5
ErrorCode (32)	MR 4
ExceptionNo (32)	MR 3
EFLAGS (32)	MR 2
EIP (32)	MR 1
$\begin{array}{ c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c$	MR ₀

#PF (page fault), #MC (machine check exception), and some #GP (general protection), #SS (stack segment fault), and #NM (no math coprocessor) exceptions are handled by the kernel and therefore do not generate exception messages.

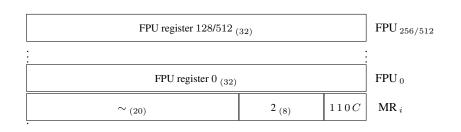
Note that executing an INT n instructions in 32-bit mode will always raise a #GP (general protection). The exception handler may interpret the error code (8n + 2, see processor manual) and emulate the INT n accordingly.

A.9 IA-32 Control Transfer Items [ia32]

General Purpose Register CtrlXferItem ($id =$	= ())	
--	-------	--

EAX (32)			MR_{i+9}	
ECX (32)			MR_{i+8}	
EDX (32)				
EBX (32)			MR_{i+6}	
ESP (32)			MR_{i+5}	
EBP (32)			MR_{i+4}	
ESI (32)			MR_{i+3}	
EFLAGS (32)			MR_{i+2}	
EIP (32)	-		MR_{i+1}	
0x3FF (20)	1 (8)	110C	MR_i	

Floating Point Register CtrlXferItem (id = 1)



Convenience Programming Interface

#include <14/ia32/arch.h>

struct **GPREGSCTRLXFERITEM** { Word raw [11] }

struct FPUREGSCTRLXFERITEM { Word raw[1] }

void Append (Msg& msg, GPRegsCtrlXferItem c)

 $[{\it MsgAppendGPRegsCtrlXferItem}]$

void Append (Msg& msg, FPURegsCtrlXferItem c)

 $[{\it MsgAppendFPURegsCtrlXferItem}]$

PROCESSOR MIRRORING 111

A.10 Processor Mirroring [ia32]

Segments

L4 uses a flat (unsegmented) memory model. There are only three segments available: user_space, a read/write segment, user_space_exec, an executable segment, and utcb_address, a read-only segment. Both user_space and user_space_exec cover (at least) the complete user-level address space. Utcb_address covers only enough memory to hold the UTCB address

The values of segment selectors *are undefined*. When a thread is created, its segment registers SS, DS, ES and FS are initialized with *user_space*, GS with *utcb_address*, and CS with *user_space_exec*. Whenever the kernel detects a general protection exception and the segment registers are not loaded properly, it reloads them with the above mentioned selectors. From the user's point of view, the segment registers cannot be modified.

However, the binary representation of *user_space* and *user_space_exec* may change at any point during program execution. Never rely on any particular value.

Furthermore, the LSL (load segment limit) machine instruction may deliver wrong segment limits, even floating ones. The result of this instruction is always *undefined*.

Debug Registers

User-level debug registers exist per thread. DR0...3, DR6 and DR7 can be accessed by the machine instructions mov n,DRx and mov DRx,r. However, only task-local breakpoints can be activated, i.e., bits G0...3 in DR7 cannot be set. Breakpoints operate per thread. Breakpoints are signaled as #DB exception (INT 1).

Note that user-level breakpoints are suspended when kernel breakpoints are set by the kernel debugger.

Model-Specific Registers

All privileged threads in the system have read and write access to all the Model-Specific Registers (MSRs) of the CPU. Modification of some MSRs may lead to undefined system behavior. Any access to an MSR by an unprivileged thread will raise an exception.

112 BOOTING

A.11 Booting [ia32]

PC-compatible Machines

L4 can be loaded at any 16-byte-aligned location beyond 0x1000 in physical memory. It can be started in real mode or in 32-bit protected mode at address 0x100 or 0x1000 relative to its load address. The protected-mode conditions are compliant to the Multiboot Standard Version 0.6.

Start Preconditions				
Real Mode 32-bit Protected M				
load base (L)	$L \ge 0$ x1000, 16-byte aligned	$L \ge 0$ x1000		
load offset (X)	X = 0x100 or X = 0x1000	X = 0x100 or X = 0x1000		
Interrupts	disabled	disabled		
Gate A20	~	open		
EFLAGS	I=0	I=0, VM=0		
CR0	PE=0	PE=1, PG=0		
(E)IP	X	L + X		
CS	L/16	0, 4GB, 32-bit exec		
SS,DS,ES	~	0, 4GB, read/write		
EAX	~	0x2BADB002		
EBX	~	*P		
$\langle P+0\rangle$		∼ OR 1		
$\langle P+4 \rangle$	n/a	below 640 K mem in K		
$\langle P+8 \rangle$		beyond 1M mem in K		
all remaining registers & flags				
(general, floating point,	~	~		
ESP, xDT, TR, CRx, DRx)				

L4 relocates itself to 0x1000, enters protected mode if started in real mode, enables paging and initializes itself.

A.12 Support for Hardware-assisted Virtualization [ia32]

In addition to its normal execution mode, L4 provides support for virtualization mode. Virtualization mode is largely common to L4's normal execution model. However, in virtualization mode, threads have access to an extended ISA, and have restricted access to L4-specific features.

Hardware virtualization mode (HVM) is based on IA-32 virtualization hardware extensions: Intel VT-x or AMD Pacifica. Threads that execute in that mode have access to an extended architecture that includes the entire privileged instruction set (ideally, within the limits of the hardware facilities). Such a thread can be seen as a virtual CPU, which contains all of the state held by a physical CPU. In addition to the "normal" page faults and exceptions already handled by L4, HVM threads generate virtualization faults on all events that would be observable by the hardware connected to a physical CPU (and some events that would be internal to a physical CPU).

The virtualization extensions introduce new kernel feature strings:

String	Feature
"x86-vmx"	Kernel has full virtualization support using Intel's VT-x.
"x86-svm"	Kernel has full virtualization support using AMD's Pacifica.

Extended Thread State

An thread inside a HVM space represents a virtualized physical processor for the virtualization HVM space. It holds all privileged and unprivileged registers of the physical processor. VM-exits cause virtualization fault messages to efficiently manage critical instructions. Virtualization fault replies allow mapping memory into the HVM space and protocol items allow read/write access to the VCPU state. EXCHANGEREGISTERS grants asynchronous access by forcing virtualization faults.

Address Space

In hardware virtualization mode, the L4 execution and resource model is mapped onto a *physical* machine model. A thread that executes in HVM has access to the privileged part of the platform architecture and runs with an additional memory translation. Depending on the hardware support for double paging, L4 either utilizes the hardware features or provides a transparent translation of guest-virtual-to-host-physical translations, based on the guest's virtual to physical, and the host's virtual to physical mappings.

SPACECONTROL

The SPACECONTROL system call has an architecture dependent *control* parameter to specify various address space characteristics. For IA-32, the *control* parameter has the following semantics.

Input Parameters

control

The v field denotes the virtualization mode for all threads in the address space. The v field can only be specified for inactive address spaces and is ignored for active address spaces. The availability of the virtualization features is announced as a KIP feature string.

v=0 An address space with no virtualization support.

Hardware virtualization mode is the hardware assisted virtualization support for IA-32, either Intel's VT-x or AMD's Pacifica. In hardware virtualization mode, the complete address space is empty and under control of the pager thread. The thread's state is extended by IA-32 processor state including control registers, all segment selectors, debugging registers, etc.

Output Parameters

control

v=1



Indicates if enabling the requested virtualization mode has succeeded (v = 1). Zero if v = 0 in the input parameter.

IA-32 HVM Control Transfer Items

Control Register CtrlX ferItem (id = 2)

CR4 Read Shadow (32)			MR_{i+8}
CR4 Guest/Host Mask	(32)		MR $_{i+7}$
CR4 (32)			MR $_{i+6}$
CR3 (32)			MR $_{i+5}$
CR2 (32)			MR $_{i+4}$
CR0 Guest/Host Mask (32)			MR_{i+3}
CR0 Read Shadow (32)			MR_{i+2}
CR0 (32)			MR $_{i+1}$
0x7F ₍₂₀₎	4 (8)	110 <i>C</i>	MR_i

Debug Register CtrlXferItem (id = 3)

DR7 (32)			MR_{i+6}
DR6 (32)			MR_{i+5}
DR3 (32)			MR_{i+4}
DR2 (32)			MR_{i+3}
DR1 (32)			MR_{i+2}
DR0 (32)			MR_{i+1}
0x3F (20)	5 (8)	110C	MR_i

Code Segment Register CtrlXferItem (id = 4)

CS_ATTR (32)			MR_{i+4}
CS_LIMIT (32)			MR_{i+3}
CS_BASE (32)			MR_{i+2}
CS (32)			MR_{i+1}
0xF (20)	6 (8)	110 <i>C</i>	MR_i

Stack Segment Register CtrlXferItem (id = 5)

SS_ATTR (32)			MR_{i+4}
SS_LIMIT (32)			MR_{i+3}
SS_BASE (32)			MR_{i+2}
SS (32)			MR_{i+1}
0xF ₍₂₀₎	7 (8)	110C	MR_i

Data Segment Register CtrlXferItem (id = 6)

DS_ATTR (32)			MR_{i+4}
DS_LIMIT (32)			MR_{i+3}
DS_BASE (32)			MR_{i+2}
DS (32)			MR_{i+1}
0xF (20)	8 (8)	110 <i>C</i>	MR_i

Extra Segment Register CtrlXferItem (id = 7)

ES_ATTR (32)			MR_{i+4}
ES_LIMIT (32)			MR_{i+3}
ES_BASE (32)			MR_{i+2}
ES (32)			MR_{i+1}
0xF ₍₂₀₎	9 (8)	110 <i>C</i>	MR_i

$\emph{F-Segment Register CtrlX} \emph{ferItem} \ (id=8)$

FS_ATTR (32)			MR_{i+4}
FS_LIMIT (32)			MR_{i+3}
FS_BASE (32)			MR_{i+2}
FS (32)			MR_{i+1}
0xF (20)	10 (8)	110 <i>C</i>	MR_i

G-Segment Register CtrlXferItem (id = 9)

GS_ATTR (32)			$ ight]$ MR $_{i+4}$
GS_LIMIT (32)			MR_{i+3}
GS_BASE (32)			$ ight]$ MR $_{i+2}$
GS (32)			MR_{i+1}
0xF (20)	11 (8)	110 <i>C</i>	MR_i

Task Register CtrlXferItem (id = 10)

TR_ATTR (32)			MR_{i+4}
TR_LIMIT (32)			MR_{i+3}
TR_BASE (32)			MR_{i+2}
TR (32)			MR_{i+1}
0xF (20)	12 (8)	110 <i>C</i>	MR_i

Local Descriptor Register CtrlXferItem (id = 11)

LDTR_ATTR (32)			
LDTR_LIMIT (32)			
LDTR_BASE (32)			
LDTR (32)		MR_{i+1}	
0xF (20)	13 (8)	110 <i>C</i>	MR_i

Interrupt Descriptor Register CtrlXferItem (id = 12)

IDTR_ATTR (32)			
IDTR_LIMIT (32)			MR_{i+2}
IDTR_BASE (32)			MR_{i+1}
0x7 ₍₂₀₎	14 (8)	110 <i>C</i>	MR_i

Global Descriptor Register CtrlXferItem (id = 13)

GDTR_ATTR (32)			
GDTR.LIMIT (32)			$ ight]$ MR $_{i+2}$
GDTR_BASE (32)		MR_{i+1}	
0x7 ₍₂₀₎	15 (8)	110 <i>C</i>	MR i

Guest Non-Reg and Exception State CtrlXferItem (id = 14)

IDT_EEC (32)				
IDT_INFO (32)				
EXIT_EEC (32)				
EXIT_INFO (32)			MR $_{i+6}$	
ENTRY_ILEN (32)			MR_{i+5}	
ENTRY_EEC (32)			MR_{i+4}	
ENTRY_INFO (32)			MR $_{i+3}$	
PENDING_DEBUG_EXC (32)			MR_{i+3}	
INTERRUPTIBILITY_STATE (32)				
ACTIVITY_STATE (32)			MR_{i+1}	
0x3FF (20)	0x3FF ₍₂₀₎ 16 ₍₈₎ 110 C			

Guest Execution Control CtrlXferItem (id = 15)

EXC_BITMAP (32)			
CPU_EXEC_CTRL (32)			MR_{i+2}
PIN_EXEC_CTRL (32)			MR_{i+1}
0x7f ₍₂₀₎	17 (8)	110C	MR_i

Other Guest State CtrlXferItem (id = 16)

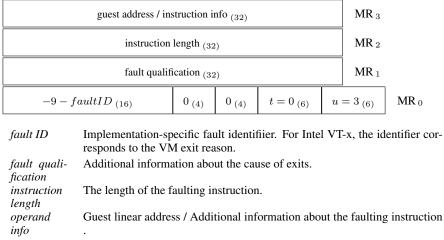
TPR_THRESHOLD $_{(32)}$					
VAPIC_ADDRESS (3	2)		MR_{i+8}		
RDTSC_OFS_HIGH (32)					
RDTSC_OFS_LOW (3	2)		MR $_{i+6}$		
DEBUGCTL_MSR_HIGH (32)					
DEBUGCTL_MSR_LOW (32)					
SYSENTER_ESP_MSR (32)					
SYSENTER_EIP_MSR (32)					
SYSENTER_CS_MSR (32)			MR_{i+1}		
0x1FF ₍₂₀₎ 18 ₍₈₎ 110 C					

Virtualization Fault Protocol

The virtualization protocol is defined between a VCPU thread and its registered pager thread. It substitutes the page fault and exception protocol used for normal threads. Virtualization fault messages are sent to the pager on events related to virtualization that are not handled directly by the hardware or by the L4 microkernel. By default, the kernel will append the fault-specific state specified below when sending kernel messages. Like with the normal fault protocols (see Section 7, the kernel will append additional control transfer items upon requests. Requests to add or remove control transfer items protocol are performed using the EXCHANGEREGISTERS system call and appropriate control transfer configuration items (see Section 2.3).

Virtualization Fault

From Pager:

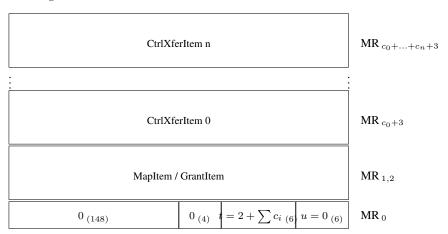


For a read fault, the virtual value of the faulting register, if the register is part of the VCPU state.

Virtualization Fault Reply

From Pager:

value



A.13 MSR-Fpage

Access to processor's model specific registers is controlled via fpages. The minimal granularity is 1. An MSR-fpage of size $2^{s'}$ has a 2^s -aligned offset address sndbase + offset, i.e $offset \mod 2^s = 0$.

control

A.13. MSR-FPAGE

offset $_{(16)}$ s' $_{(6)}$ $s=3$ v r
--

r Allow read access to the specified MSRs.

w Allow write access to the specified MSRs.

g Ignored for mappings into non-HVM spaces. For mappings into HVM space v=0 grants access to the system MSR. On v=0 the kernel installs a VCPU local MSRs which is transparently multiplexed.

s' $2^{s'}$ is the size of the region.

offset Offset specifies the lowest 16 bits of a MSR base address.

Appendix B

AMD64 Interface

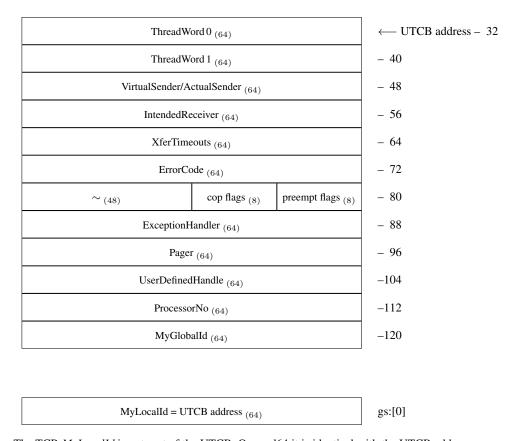
B.1 Virtual Registers [amd64]

Thread Control Registers (TCRs)

TCRs are implemented as part of the amd64-specific user-level thread control block (UTCB). The address of the current thread's UTCB will not change over the lifetime of the thread. Setting the UTCB address of an active thread via Thread-Control is similar to deletion and re-creation. There is a fixed correlation between the UtcbLocation parameter when invoking Thread-Control and the UTCB address. The UTCB address of the current thread can be loaded through a machine instruction

mov
$$\%$$
gs:[0], $\%$ *r*

UTCB objects of the current thread can then be accessed as any other memory object. UTCBs of other threads must not be accessed, even if they are physically accessible. ThreadWord0 and ThreadWord1 are free to be used by systems software (e.g., IDL compilers). The kernel associates no semantics with these words.



The TCR *MyLocalId* is not part of the UTCB. On amd64 it is identical with the UTCB address and can be loaded from memory location gs:[0].

Message Registers (MRs)

Memory-mapped MRs are implemented as part of the amd64-specific user-level thread control block (UTCB). The address of the current thread's UTCB will not change over the lifetime of the thread. Setting the UTCB address of an active thread via ThreadControl is similar to deletion and re-creation. There is a fixed correlation between the UtcbLocation parameter when invoking ThreadControl and the UTCB address. The UTCB address of the current thread can

be loaded through a machine instruction

mov
$$\%$$
gs:[0], $\%$ r

UTCB objects of the current thread can then be accessed as any other memory object. UTCBs of other threads must not be accessed, even if they are physically accessible.

The first 8 message registers MR $_0$ through MR $_7$ are always mapped to general register. MR $_{8...63}$ are always mapped to memory.

MR_{07}	MR 7	R15
	MR ₆	R14
	MR 5	R13
	MR 4	R12
	MR 3	R10
	MR ₂	RBX
	MR ₁	RAX
	MR ₀	R09

Buffer Registers (BRs)

BRs are implemented as part of the amd64-specific user-level thread control block (UTCB). The address of the current thread's UTCB will not change over the lifetime of the thread. Setting the UTCB address of an active thread via Thread-Control is similar to deletion and re-creation. There is a fixed correlation between the UtcbLocation parameter when invoking ThreadControl and the UTCB address. The UTCB address of the current thread can be loaded through a machine instruction

mov
$$\%$$
gs:[0], $\%$ r

UTCB objects of the current thread can then be accessed as any other memory object. UTCBs of other threads must not be accessed, even if they are physically accessible.

 $BR_{0...32}$ [UTCB fields]

BR _{0 (64)}	← UTCB address –128
BR _{1 (64)}	-136
:	'
BR _{32 (64)}	-384

B.2 Systemcalls [amd64]

The system-calls which are invoked by the call instruction take the target of the calls the from system-call link fields in the kernel interface page (see page 2). Each system-call link specifies an absolute address. An application may use instructions other than call to invoke the system-calls, but must ensure that a valid return address resides on the stack.

KERNELINTERFACE [Slow Systemcall]

_	RAX	- KernelInterface $ ightarrow$	RAX	base address
_	RCX	,	RCX	API Version
_	RDX		RDX	API Flags
_	RSI	lock: nop	RSI	Kernel ID
_	RDI		RDI	≡
_	RBX		RBX	=
_	RBP		RBP	=
_	R08		R08	=
_	R09		R09	=
_	R10		R10	=
_	R11		R11	=
_	R12		R12	=
_	R13		R13	=
_	R14		R14	=
_	R15		R15	=
_	RSP		RSP	=
		l	1	

EXCHANGEREGISTERS [Systemcall]

```
- Exchange Registers 
ightarrow
               dest
                                                          RAX
                                                                 result
                      RAX
                      RCX
                                                          RCX
                SP
                                                                 SP
                      RDX
                                                          RDX
                                                          RSI
            control
                      RSI
                               call ExchangeRegisters
                                                                 control
             pager
                      RDI
                                                          RDI
                                                                 pager
                                                          RBX
                      RBX
                                                                 \sim
                      RBP
                                                          RBP
                ΙP
                                                                 ΙP
                      R08
                                                          R08
           FLAGS
                      R09
                                                          R09
                                                                 FLAGS
User Defined Handle \\
                      R10
                                                          R10
                                                                 User Defined Handle
                                                          R11
                      R11
                      R12
                                                          R12
                                                          R13
                      R13
                      R14
                                                          R14
                      R15
                                                          R15
                      RSP
                                                          RSP
```

[&]quot;FLAGS" refers to the user-modifiable amd64 processor flags that are held in the RFLAGS register.

THREADCONTROL [Privileged Systemcall]

_	RAX	- Thread Control $ ightarrow$	RAX	result
_	RCX		RCX	\sim
scheduler	RDX		RDX	\sim
pager	RSI	call <i>ThreadControl</i>	RSI	\sim
dest	RDI		RDI	\sim
_	RBX		RBX	\sim
_	RBP		RBP	\sim
SpaceSpecifier	R08		R08	\sim
UTCBLocation	R09		R09	\sim
_	R10		R10	\sim
_	R11		R11	\sim
_	R12		R12	\sim
_	R13		R13	\sim
_	R14		R14	\sim
_	R15		R15	\sim
_	RSP		RSP	\sim

SYSTEMCLOCK [Systemcall]

_	RAX	- SystemClock $ ightarrow$	RAX	clock
_	RCX		RCX	\sim
_	RDX		RDX	\sim
_	RSI	call SystemClock	RSI	\sim
_	RDI		RDI	\sim
_	RBX		RBX	\sim
_	RBP		RBP	\sim
_	R08		R08	\sim
_	R09		R09	\sim
_	R10		R10	\sim
_	R11		R11	\sim
_	R12		R12	\sim
_	R13		R13	\sim
_	R14		R14	\sim
_	R15		R15	\sim
_	RSP		RSP	\sim

THREADSWITCH [Systemcall]

_	RAX	- ThreadSwitch $ ightarrow$	RAX	\sim
_	RCX		RCX	\sim
_	RDX		RDX	\sim
_	RSI	call <i>ThreadSwitch</i>	RSI	\sim
dest	RDI		RDI	\sim
_	RBX		RBX	\sim
_	RBP		RBP	\sim
_	R08		R08	\sim
_	R09		R09	\sim
_	R10		R10	\sim
_	R11		R11	\sim
_	R12		R12	\sim
_	R13		R13	\sim
_	R14		R14	\sim
_	R15		R15	\sim
_	RSP		RSP	\sim

SCHEDULE [Systemcall]

				_
_	RAX	- Schedule $ ightarrow$	RAX	result
_	RCX		RCX	\sim
time control	RDX		RDX	time control
prio	RSI	call <i>Schedule</i>	RSI	\sim
dest	RDI		RDI	\sim
_	RBX		RBX	\sim
_	RBP		RBP	\sim
processor control	R08		R08	\sim
preemption control	R09		R09	\sim
_	R10		R10	\sim
_	R11		R11	\sim
_	R12		R12	\sim
_	R13		R13	\sim
_	R14		R14	\sim
_	R15		R15	\sim
_	RSP		RSP	\sim

IPC [Systemcall]

MR_{1}	RAX	- Ipc $ ightarrow$	RAX	MR_{1}
_	RCX		RCX	\sim
FromSpecifier	RDX		RDX	\sim
to	RSI	call <i>Ipc</i>	RSI	from
UTCB	RDI		RDI	=
MR_2	RBX		RBX	MR_2
_	RBP		RBP	\sim
Timeouts	R08		R08	\sim
MR_{0}	R09		R09	MR_{0}
MR_3	R10		R10	MR_3
_	R11		R11	\sim
MR_{4}	R12		R12	MR_4
MR_{5}	R13		R13	MR_{5}
MR_{6}	R14		R14	MR_{6}
MR_{7}	R15		R15	MR_{7}
_	RSP		RSP	\sim

LIPC [Systemcall]

```
- \ Lipc \rightarrow
        MR_1
                                                           MR_1
                 RAX
                                                    RAX
                                                    RCX
                 RCX
{\it From Specifier}
                 RDX
                                                    RDX
       to
UTCB
                                                           from
                                \operatorname{call} \mathit{Lipc}
                RSI
                                                    RSI
                 RDI
                                                    RDI
        MR_2
                                                           MR_2
                 RBX
                                                    RBX
                 RBP
                                                    RBP
    Timeouts
                 R08
                                                    R08
        MR_0
MR_3
                                                            MR_0
                 R09
                                                    R09
                 R10
                                                    R10
                                                            MR_3
                                                    R11
                 R11
                                                            MR_4
        MR_4
                 R12
                                                    R12
        MR_{\,5}
                                                            MR_{\,5}
                 R13
                                                    R13
        MR_{6}
                                                            MR_{6}
                 R14
                                                    R14
        MR_7
                                                            MR_7
                 R15
                                                    R15
                 RSP
                                                    RSP
```

UNMAP [Systemcall]

MR_{1}	RAX	- Unmap $ ightarrow$	RAX	MR_{1}
_	RCX		RCX	\sim
control	RDX		RDX	\sim
\sim	RSI	call <i>Unmap</i>	RSI	\sim
UTCB	RDI		RDI	\equiv
MR_2	RBX		RBX	MR_2
_	RBP		RBP	\sim
_	R08		R08	\sim
MR_{0}	R09		R09	MR_{0}
MR_3	R10		R10	MR_3
_	R11		R11	\sim
MR_{4}	R12		R12	MR_4
MR_{5}	R13		R13	MR_{5}
MR_{6}	R14		R14	MR_{6}
MR_{7}	R15		R15	MR_{7}
_	RSP		RSP	\sim

SPACECONTROL [Privileged Systemcall]

_	RAX	- Space Control $ ightarrow$	RAX	result
_	RCX		RCX	\sim
KernelInterfacePageArea	RDX		RDX	control
control	RSI	call SpaceControl	RSI	\sim
SpaceSpecifier	RDI		RDI	\sim
_	RBX		RBX	\sim
_	RBP		RBP	\sim
UTCBArea	R08		R08	\sim
Redirector	R09		R09	\sim
_	R10		R10	\sim
_	R11		R11	\sim
_	R12		R12	\sim
_	R13		R13	\sim
_	R14		R14	\sim
_	R15		R15	\sim
_	RSP		RSP	\sim

PROCESSORCONTROL [Privileged Systemcall]

_	RAX	- Processor Control $ ightarrow$	RAX	result
_	RCX		RCX	\sim
ExternalFrequency	RDX		RDX	\sim
InternalFrequency	RSI	call <i>ProcessorControl</i>	RSI	\sim
ProcessorNo	RDI		RDI	\sim
_	RBX		RBX	\sim
_	RBP		RBP	\sim
voltage	R08		R08	\sim
_	R09		R09	\sim
_	R10		R10	\sim
_	R11		R11	\sim
_	R12		R12	\sim
_	R13		R13	\sim
_	R14		R14	\sim
_	R15		R15	\sim
-	RSP		RSP	\sim

MEMORYCONTROL [Privileged Systemcall]

MR_{1}	RAX	- Memory Control $ ightarrow$	RAX	\sim
$attribute_0$	RCX		RCX	\sim
control	RDX		RDX	result
$attribute_1$	RSI	call MemoryControl	RSI	\sim
UTCB	RDI		RDI	\equiv
MR_2	RBX		RBX	\sim
_	RBP		RBP	\sim
$attribute_2$	R08		R08	\sim
MR_{0}	R09		R09	\sim
MR_3	R10		R10	\sim
$attribute_3$	R11		R11	\sim
MR_{4}	R12		R12	\sim
MR_{5}	R13		R13	\sim
MR_{6}	R14		R14	\sim
MR_{7}	R15		R15	\sim
_	RSP		RSP	\sim

130 IO PORTS

B.3 IO Ports [amd64]

IO Fpages

On AMD64 processors, IO-ports are handled as fpages. IO fpages can be mapped, granted, and unmapped like memory fpages. Their minimal granularity is 1. An IO-fpage of size $2^{s'}$ has a $2^{s'}$ -aligned base address p, i.e. $p \mod 2^{s'}$ =0. An fpage with base port address p and size $2^{s'}$ is denoted as described below.

IO fpage
$$(p,2^{s'})$$

$$p_{(48)} \hspace{1cm} s'_{(6)} \hspace{1cm} s=2_{(6)} \hspace{1cm} 0110$$

IO-ports can only be mapped idempotently, i.e., physical port x is either mapped at IO address x in the task's IO address space, or it is not mapped at all. There are no distinct rights associated with IO ports, i.e., a task can be granted either read- and write-access to an IO port, ore none at all.

IO Pagefault Protocol

A thread generating an IO port exception will cause the kernel to transparently generate an IO-pagefault IPC to the faulting thread's pager. The behavior of the faulting thread is undefined if the pager does not exactly follow this protocol.



faulting user-level IP $_{(64)}$						MR 2	
faulting port (48)	size (6	3)	s = 2	(6)	0110	MR 1	
-8 (44)	0110	0 (4)	t :	= 0 (6)	u	= 2 (6)	MR ₀

Acceptor [BR₀]

0 (48)	16 (6)	$s = 2_{(6)}$	0000	BR $_0$

The acceptor covers the complete IO address space. The kernel accepts mappings or grants into this region on behalf of the faulting thread. The received message is discarded.

Generic Programming Interface

#include <l4/amd64/specials.h>

Fpage IoFpage (Word BaseAddress, int FpageSize)

 $\textit{Fpage IoFpageLog2} \ \ (\textit{Word BaseAddress, int Log2FpageSize} <= 16)$

Delivers an IO fpage with the specified location and size.

CACHEABILITY HINTS 131

B.4 Cacheability Hints [amd64]

String items can specify cacheability hints to the kernel (see page 59). For amd64, the cacheability hints have the following semantics.

hh=00 Use the processor's default cacheability strategy. Typically, cache lines are allocated for data read and written (assuming that the processor's default strategy is write-back and write-allocate).

hh=01 Allocate cache lines in the entire cache hierarchy for data read or written.

hh=10 Do not allocate new cache lines (entire cache hierarchy) for data read or written.

hh=11 Allocate only new L1 cache line for data read or written. Do not allocate cache lines in lower cache hierarchies.

Convenience Programming Interface

#include <l4/ipc.h>

CacheAllocationHint UseDefaultCacheLineAllocation

CacheAllocationHint AllocateNewCacheLines

 $Cache Allocation Hint \ \textbf{\textit{DoNotAllocateNewCacheLines}}$

 $Cache Allocation Hint \ \ \textbf{AllocateOnlyNewL1CacheLines}$

132 MEMORY ATTRIBUTES

B.5 Memory Attributes [amd64]

The AMD64 architecture in general supports the following memory attributes values.

attribute	value
Default	0
Uncacheable	1
Write Combining	2
Write Through	5
Write Protected	6
Write Back	7

Note that some attributes are only supported on certain processors. See the "AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual Volume 2: System Programming" for the semantics of the memory attributes and which processors they are supported on.

Generic Programming Interface

#include <I4/misc.h>

Word DefaultMemory

Word UncacheableMemory

 $Word \ \ Write Combining Memory$

Word WriteThroughMemory

Word WriteProtectedMemory

Word WriteBackMemory

B.6 Exception Message Format [amd64]

To Exception Handler

ErrorCode						
ExceptionNo						
	RFL	AGS			MR 18	
	RS	SP			MR 17	
	R	11			MR 16	
	R	09			MR 15	
	R	08			MR 14	
	RI	3P			MR 13	
	Rl	DI			MR 12	
	R	SI			MR 11	
	RI	ΟX			MR 10	
	RC	CX			MR 9	
	R.A	ΑX			MR 8	
R15						
	R	14			MR 6	
R13					MR 5	
R12						
R10					MR_3	
RBX					MR_2	
	R	IP			MR 1	
-4/-5 (44)	0 (4)	0 (4)	$t = 0_{(6)}$	$u = 20_{(6)}$	MR ₀	

#PF (page fault), #MC (machine check exception), and some #GP (general protection), #SS (stack segment fault), and #NM (no math coprocessor) exceptions are handled by the kernel and therefore do not generate exception messages.

Note that executing an INT n instructions in 32-bit mode will always raise a #GP (general protection). The exception handler may interpret the error code (8n+2, see processor manual) and emulate the INT n accordingly.

134 PROCESSOR MIRRORING

B.7 Processor Mirroring [amd64]

Segments

L4 uses a flat (unsegmented) memory model. There are only three segments available: user_space, a read/write segment, user_space_exec, an executable segment, and utcb_address, a read-only segment. Both user_space and user_space_exec cover (at least) the complete user-level address space. Utcb_address covers only enough memory to hold the UTCB address.

The values of segment selectors *are undefined*. When a thread is created, its segment registers SS, DS, ES and FS are initialized with *user_space*, GS with *utcb_address*, and CS with *user_space_exec*. Whenever the kernel detects a general protection exception and the segment registers are not loaded properly, it reloads them with the above mentioned selectors. From the user's point of view, the segment registers cannot be modified.

However, the binary representation of *user_space* and *user_space_exec* may change at any point during program execution. Never rely on any particular value.

Furthermore, the LSL (load segment limit) machine instruction may deliver wrong segment limits, even floating ones. The result of this instruction is always *undefined*.

Debug Registers

User-level debug registers exist per thread. DR0...3, DR6 and DR7 can be accessed by the machine instructions mov n,DRx and mov DRx,r. However, only task-local breakpoints can be activated, i.e., bits G0...3 in DR7 cannot be set. Breakpoints operate per thread. Breakpoints are signaled as #DB exception (INT 1).

Note that user-level breakpoints are suspended when kernel breakpoints are set by the kernel debugger.

Model-Specific Registers

All privileged threads in the system have read and write access to all the Model-Specific Registers (MSRs) of the CPU. Modification of some MSRs may lead to undefined system behavior. Any access to an MSR by an unprivileged thread will raise an exception.

BOOTING 135

B.8 Booting [amd64]

PC-compatible Machines

L4 can be loaded at any 16-byte-aligned location beyond 0x1000 in physical memory. It can be started in real mode or in 32-bit protected mode at address 0x100 or 0x1000 relative to its load address. The protected-mode conditions are compliant to the Multiboot Standard Version 0.6.

Start Preconditions				
	Real Mode	32-bit Protected Mode		
load base (L)	$L \ge 0$ x1000, 16-byte aligned	$L \ge 0$ x1000		
load offset (X)	X = 0x100 or X = 0x1000	X = 0x100 or X = 0x1000		
Interrupts	disabled	disabled		
Gate A20	~	open		
EFLAGS	I=0	I=0, VM=0		
CR0	PE=0	PE=1, PG=0		
(E)IP	X	L + X		
CS	L/16	0, 4GB, 32-bit exec		
SS,DS,ES	~	0, 4GB, read/write		
EAX	~	0x2BADB002		
EBX	~	*P		
$\langle P+0 \rangle$		∼ OR 1		
$\langle P+4 \rangle$	n/a	below 640 K mem in K		
$\langle P+8 \rangle$		beyond 1M mem in K		
all remaining registers & flags				
(general, floating point,	~	~		
ESP, xDT, TR, CRx, DRx)				

L4 relocates itself to 0x1000, enters protected mode if started in real mode, enables paging and initializes itself.

136 BOOTING

Appendix C

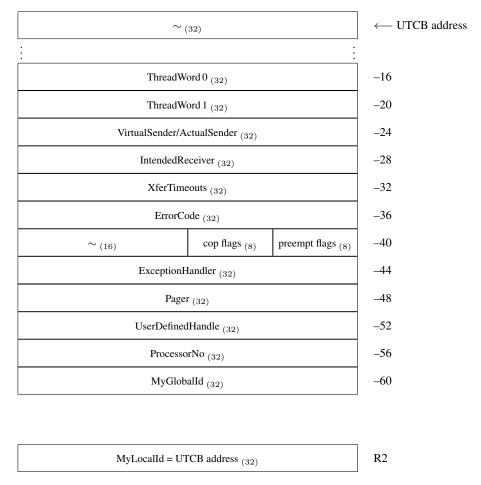
PowerPC Interface

138 VIRTUAL REGISTERS

C.1 Virtual Registers [powerpc]

Thread Control Registers (TCRs)

TCRs are mapped to memory locations. They are implemented as part of the PowerPC-specific user-level thread control block (UTCB). The address of the current thread's UTCB is identical to the thread's local ID, and is thus immutable. The UTCB address is provided in the general purpose register R2 at application start. The R2 register must contain the UTCB address for every system call invocation. UTCB objects of the current thread can be accessed as any other memory object. UTCBs of other threads must not be accessed, even if they are physically accessible. ThreadWord0 and ThreadWord1 are free to be used by systems software (e.g., IDL compilers). The kernel associates no semantics with these words.

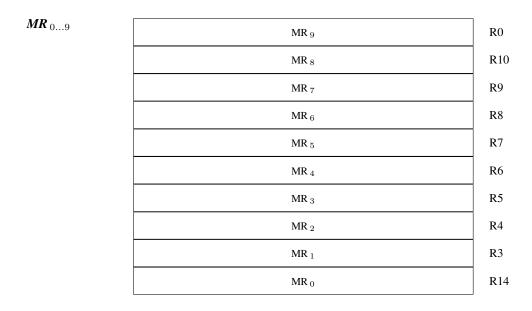


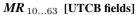
The TCR MyLocalId is not part of the UTCB. On PowerPC it is identical with the UTCB address and can be loaded from register R2.

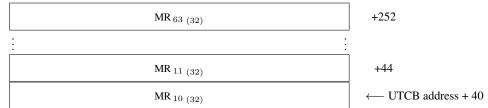
Message Registers (MRs)

Message registers MR_0 through MR_9 map to the processor's general purpose register file. The remaining message registers map to memory locations in the UTCB. MR_{10} starts at byte offset 40 in the UTCB, and successive message registers follow in memory.

VIRTUAL REGISTERS 139







Buffer Registers (BRs)

The buffer registers map to memory locations in the UTCB. BR $_{0}$ is at byte offset -64 in the UTCB, BR $_{1}$ at byte offset -68, etc.



UTCB Memory With Undefined Semantics

The kernel will associate no semantics with memory located at *UTCB address*... *UTCB address* + 39. The application can use this memory as thread local storage, e.g., for implementing the L4 API. Note, however, that the memory contents within this region may be overwritten during a system-call operating on message registers.

All undefined UTCB memory which is not covered by the above mentioned region may have kernel defined semantics.

C.2 Systemcalls [powerpc]

The PowerPC system calls are invoked by changing the location of the instruction pointer to the location of the system call address, with the return address in the link-return (LR) register. The invocation may take place via any mechanism which changes the instruction pointer location. The precise locations of the system calls are stored in the kernel interface page (see page 2).

The locations of the system calls are fixed during the life of an application, although they may change outside of the life of an application. It is not valid to prelink an application against a set of system call locations. The official locations are always provided in the kernel interface page.

The registers defined to survive across system-call invocations (unless otherwise noted) are: R1, R2, R30, R31, and the floating point registers. All other registers contain return values, are undefined, or may be preserved according to processor specific rules.

The R2 register must contain the UTCB pointer when invoking all system calls.

PowerPC uses one alternative system call invocation mechanism, for the KERNELINTERFACE system call. This system call is invoked via the 'tlbia' instruction, and most registers are preserved across the function call.

KERNELINTERFACE [Slow Systemcall]

UTCB
$$R2$$
- KernelInterface \rightarrow $R2$ \equiv - $R3$ KIP base address- $R4$ $R4$ API Version- $R5$ $R5$ API Flags- $R6$ $R6$ $R6$ $R6$ - $R7$ $R7$ $R8$ - $R9$ $R8$ $R8$ - $R9$ $R9$ $R10$

For this system-call, all registers other than the output registers are preserved. The tlbia instruction encoding is 0x7c0002e4.

EXCHANGEREGISTERS [Systemcall]

```
UTCB
                             - Exchange Registers \rightarrow
                      R2
                                                           R2
                                                                 \equiv
                                                                 result
               dest
                      R3
                                                          R3
            control
                                                                 control
                      R4
                                                          R4
                              call ExchangeRegisters
                SP
                      R5
                                                           R5
                                                                 SP
                ΙP
                      R6
                                                          R6
                                                                 ΙP
            FLAGS
                      R7
                                                           R7
                                                                 FLAGS
UserDefinedHandle
                                                                 User Defined Handle
                                                          R8
                      R8
             pager
                      R9
                                                                 pager
                      R10
                                                          R10
```

"FLAGS" refers to the user-modifiable PowerPC processor flags that are held in the MSR register. See the PowerPC Processor Mirroring section (page 148).

THREADCONTROL [Privileged Systemcall]

UTCB	R2	- Thread Control $ ightarrow$	R2	=
dest	R3		R3	result
SpaceSpecifier	R4		R4	\sim
Scheduler	R5	call <i>ThreadControl</i>	R5	\sim
Pager	R6		R6	\sim
UtcbLocation	<i>R7</i>		R7	\sim
_	R8		R8	\sim
_	R9		R9	\sim
_	R10		R10	\sim

SYSTEMCLOCK [Systemcall]

UTCB	R2	- SystemClock $ ightarrow$	R2	≡
_	R3		R3	clock 3263
_	R4		R4	clock 031
_	R5	call SystemClock	R5	\sim
_	R6		R6	\sim
_	R7		R7	\sim
_	R8		R8	\sim
_	R9		R9	\sim
_	R10		R10	\sim
		•		

THREADSWITCH [Systemcall]

UTCB	R2	- ThreadSwitch $ ightarrow$	R2	\equiv
dest	R3		R3	\sim
_	R4		R4	\sim
_	R5	call <i>ThreadSwitch</i>	R5	\sim
_	R6		R6	\sim
_	<i>R7</i>		R7	\sim
_	R8		R8	\sim
_	R9		R9	\sim
_	R10		R10	\sim

SCHEDULE [Systemcall]

UTCB	R2	- Schedule $ ightarrow$	R2	=
dest	R3		R3	result
time control	R4		R4	time control
processor control	R5	call <i>Schedule</i>	R5	\sim
prio	R6		R6	\sim
preemption control	R7		R7	\sim
_	R8		R8	\sim
_	R9		R9	\sim
_	R10		R10	\sim
		'		

IPC [Systemcall]

MR_{9}	R0	- Ipc $ ightarrow$	R0	MR_{9}
_	R1		R1	\equiv
UTCB	R2		R2	\equiv
MR_{1}	R3	call <i>Ipc</i>	R3	MR_{1}
MR_2	R4		R4	MR_2
MR_3	R5		R5	MR_3
MR_{4}	R6		R6	MR_4
MR $_5$	R7		R7	MR_{5}
MR_{6}	R8		R8	MR_{6}
MR $_{7}$	R9		R9	MR_{7}
MR_{8}	R10		R10	MR_{8}
_	R11		R11	\sim
_	R12		R12	\sim
_	R13		R13	\sim
MR_{0}	R14		R14	MR_{0}
to	R15		R15	\sim
FromSpecifier	R16		R16	from
Timeouts	R17		R17	\sim

LIPC [Systemcall]

MR 9	R0	- Lipc $ ightarrow$	R0	MR_{9}
_	R1		R1	\equiv
UTCB	R2		R2	=
MR_{1}	R3	call <i>Lipc</i>	R3	MR_{1}
MR_{2}	R4		R4	MR_2
MR_3	R5		R5	MR_3
$MR_{\ 4}$	R6		R6	MR_4
MR 5	<i>R7</i>		R7	MR_{5}
MR_{6}	R8		R8	MR_{6}
MR_{7}	R9		R9	MR_{7}
MR $_8$	R10		R10	MR_{8}
_	R11		R11	\sim
_	R12		R12	\sim
_	R13		R13	\sim
MR_{0}	R14		R14	MR_{0}
to	R15		R15	\sim
FromSpecifier	R16		R16	from
Timeouts	R17		R17	\sim
		•	'	

UNMAP [Systemcall]

```
MR_9
           R0
                         - \ Unmap \rightarrow
                                                  R0
                                                          MR_9
           R1
                                                  R1
                                                          \equiv
UTCB
                                                          \equiv
           R2
                                                  R2
 MR_{1}
MR_{2}
                                                          MR_{1}
MR_{2}
           R3
                          {\rm call}\ Unmap
                                                  R3
          R4
                                                  R4
 MR <sub>3</sub>
MR <sub>4</sub>
          R5
                                                  R5
                                                          MR_3
                                                  R6
                                                          MR_4
           R6
 MR 5
MR 6
                                                          MR_{5}
MR_{6}
                                                  R7
           R7
           R8
                                                  R8
  MR_7
                                                          MR_7
           R9
                                                  R9
  MR_{8}
           R10
                                                  R10
                                                          MR_{8}
           R11
                                                  R11
           R12
                                                  R12
           R13
                                                  R13
  MR_0
           R14
                                                  R14
                                                          MR_0
control
                                                  R15
           R15
```

SPACECONTROL [Privileged Systemcall]

UTCB	R2	- Space Control $ ightarrow$	R2	≡
SpaceSpecifier	R3		R3	result
control	R4		R4	control
Kernel Interface Page Area	R5	call SpaceControl	R5	\sim
UtcbArea	R6		R6	\sim
Redirector	R7		R7	\sim
_	R8		R8	\sim
_	R9		R9	\sim
_	R10		R10	\sim

PROCESSORCONTROL [Privileged Systemcall]

UTCB	R2	- Processor Control $ ightarrow$	R2	=
processor no	R3		R3	result
InternalFreq	R4		R4	\sim
ExternalFreq	R5	call <i>ProcessorControl</i>	R5	\sim
voltage	R6		R6	\sim
_	R7		R7	\sim
_	R8		R8	\sim
_	R9		R9	\sim
_	R10		R10	\sim

MEMORYCONTROL [Privileged Systemcall]

R0	- Memory Control $ ightarrow$	R0	\sim
R1	_	R1	=
R2		R2	=
R3	call <i>MemoryControl</i>	R3	result
R4		R4	\sim
R5		R5	\sim
R6		R6	\sim
R7		R7	\sim
R8		R8	\sim
R9		R9	\sim
R10		R10	\sim
R11		R11	\sim
R12		R12	\sim
R13		R13	\sim
R14		R14	\sim
R15		R15	\sim
R16		R16	\sim
R17		R17	\sim
R18		R18	\sim
R19		R19	\sim
	R1 R2 R3 R4 R5 R6 R7 R8 R9 R10 R11 R12 R13 R14 R15 R16 R17	R1 R2 R3 call MemoryControl R4 R5 R6 R7 R8 R9 R10 R11 R12 R13 R14 R15 R16 R17 R18	R1 R2 R3 call MemoryControl R3 R4 R5 R6 R6 R7 R7 R8 R8 R9 R10 R10 R11 R11 R12 R12 R13 R14 R15 R15 R16 R17 R18 R17 R18

144 MEMORY ATTRIBUTES

C.3 Memory Attributes [powerpc]

The PowerPC architecture supports the following memory/cache attribute values, to be used with the MEMORYCONTROL system-call:

attribute	value
Default	0
Write-through	1
Write-back	2
Caching-inhibited	3
Caching-enabled	4
Memory-global (coherent)	5
Memory-local (not coherent)	6
Guarded	7
Speculative	8

The default attributes enable write-back, caching, and speculation. Only if the kernel is compiled with support for multiple processors will memory coherency be enabled by default.

The PowerPC architecture places a variety of restrictions on the usage of the memory/cache attributes. Some combinations are meaningless (such as combining write-through with caching-inhibited), or are not permitted and will lead to undefined behavior (for example, instruction fetching is incompatible with some combinations of attributes). The precise semantics of the memory/cache access attributes are described in the "Programming Environments Manual For 32-Bit Implementations of the PowerPC Architecture."

Before disabling the cache for a page, the software must ensure that all memory belonging to the target page is flushed from the cache.

Generic Programming Interface

#include <I4/misc.h>

Word DefaultMemory

Word WriteThroughMemory

Word WriteBackMemory

Word CachingInhibitedMemory

Word CachingEnabledMemory

Word GlobalMemory

Word LocalMemory

Word GuardedMemory

Word SpeculativeMemory

SPACE CONTROL 145

C.4 Space Control [powerpc]

The SPACECONTROL system call has an architecture dependent *control* parameter to specify various address space characteristics. For PowerPC, the *control* parameter has the following semantics.

Input Parameters

control	0 (2)	t	0 (29)

A value of 1 instructs the kernel to add an entry to the translation table for extended mappings. This table allows mapping of memory addresses longer than 32 bits on 32-bit systems. The desired mapping is specified in the remaining parameters of the SpaceControl system call as follows: The redirector field must contain the highest 32 bits of the desired address, while the utcb_area field must contain the lower 32 bits. The kip_area field contains a regular fpage, which specifies a region of 32 bit addresses that should be mapped to a 64 bit address. If any address in this fpage is mapped to a thread, the address will be translated to the corresponding 64 bit address. If the mapping is successfull, the translation table entry is deleted.

Output Parameter



Indicates if an entry was successfully added to the kernel's translation table for extended mappings.

C.5 Exception Message Format [powerpc]

System Call Trap

System Call Trap Message to Exception Handler

Flags (32)	MR ₁₂		
SP (32)	MR 11		
IP (32)	MR ₁₀		
R0 (32)	MR 9		
R10 (32)	MR 8		
R9 (32)	MR 7		
R8 (32)	MR ₆		
R7 (32)	MR 5		
R6 (32)	MR 4		
R5 (32)	MR 3		
R4 (32)			
R3 (32)	MR 1		
$\begin{array}{ c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c$	MR_0		

When user code executes the PowerPC 'sc' instruction, the kernel delivers the system call trap message to the exception handler. The kernel preserves only partial user state when handling an 'sc' instruction. State is preserved similarly to the SVR4 PowerPC ABI for function calls. The non-volatile registers are R1, R2, R13...R31, CR2, CR3, CR4, LR, and FPSCR. The volatile registers are R0, R3...R12, CR0, CR1, CR5...CR7, CTR, and XER. Thread virtual registers may also be clobbered.

Generic Traps

Generic Trap Message To Exception Handler

LocalID (32)				
ErrorCode (32)				
ExceptionNo (32)				
Flags (32)				
SP (32)				
IP (32)				
$\begin{array}{ c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c$				

The kernel synthesizes exception messages in response to architecture specific events. Some traps are handled by the kernel and therefore do not generate exception messages. The kernel preserves all user state, including thread virtual registers.

148 PROCESSOR MIRRORING

C.6 Processor Mirroring [powerpc]

The kernel will expose the following supervisor instructions to all user level programs via emulation: MFSPR for the PVR, MFSPR and MTSPR for the DABR and other cpu-specific debug registers.

The kernel will emulate the MFSPR and MTSPR instructions for accessing cpu-specific performance monitor registers on behalf of privileged tasks. The performance monitor registers are global, and not per-thread.

The EXCHANGEREGISTERS system-call accesses the flags of the processor. The flags map directly to the PowerPC MSR register. The following bits may be read and modified by user applications: LE, BE, SE, FE0, and FE1. The kernel also exposes additional cpu-specific bits.

BOOTING 149

C.7 Booting [powerpc]

Apple New World Compatible Machines

L4 must be loaded into memory at the physical location defined by the kernel's ELF header. It can be started with virtual addressing enabled or disabled. Execution of L4 must begin at the entry point defined by the kernel's ELF header.

When entering the kernel, the registers which support in-register file parameter passing, R3–R10 according to the SVR4 ABI, must be cleared for upwards compatibility, except as noted below. All other registers in the register file are undefined at kernel entry.

The kernel may use OpenFirmware for debug console I/O. To support OpenFirmware I/O, the OpenFirmware virtual mode client call-back address must be passed to the kernel in register R5, and OpenFirmware must be prepared to handle client call-backs using virtual addressing. In all other cases, register R5 must be zero.

The boot loader must copy the OpenFirmware device tree to memory, and record its physical location in a memory descriptor of the kernel interface page. The copy of the device tree must include the package handles of the device tree nodes

C.8 Support for Hardware-accelerated Virtualization [powerpc]

In addition to its normal execution mode, L4 provides support for virtualization mode. Virtualization mode is largely common to L4's normal execution model. However, in virtualization mode, threads have access to an extended ISA, and have restricted access to L4-specific features.

Hardware-accelerated virtualization mode (HVM) is based on trap-and-emulate of privileged PowerPC instructions. Threads that execute in that mode have access to an extended architecture that includes the entire privileged instruction set (ideally, within the limits of the hardware facilities). Such a thread can be seen as a virtual CPU, which contains all of the state held by a physical CPU. In addition to the "normal" page faults and exceptions already handled by L4, HVM threads generate virtualization faults on all events that would be observable by the hardware connected to a physical CPU (and some events that would be internal to a physical CPU).

The virtualization extensions introduce new kernel feature strings:

String	Feature
"powerpc-hvm"	Kernel has virtualization support

Extended Thread State

An thread inside a HVM space represents a virtualized physical processor for the virtualization HVM space. It holds all privileged and unprivileged registers of the physical processor. VM-exits cause virtualization fault messages to efficiently manage critical instructions. Virtualization fault replies allow mapping memory into the HVM space and protocol items allow read/write access to the VCPU state. EXCHANGEREGISTERS grants asynchronous access by forcing virtualization faults

Address Space

In hardware-accelerated virtualization mode, the L4 execution and resource model is mapped onto a *physical* machine model. A thread that executes in HVM has access to the privileged part of the platform architecture and runs with an additional memory translation. Depending on the hardware support for double paging, L4 provides a transparent translation of guest-virtual-to-host-physical translations, based on the guest's TLB entries, and the host's virtual to physical mappings (achieved via L4 mappings).

SPACECONTROL

The SPACECONTROL system call has an architecture dependent *control* parameter to specify various address space characteristics. For PowerPC, the *control* parameter has the following semantics.

Input Parameters

control



The v field denotes the virtualization mode for all threads in the address space. The v field can only be specified for inactive address spaces and is ignored for active address spaces. The availability of the virtualization features is announced as a KIP feature string.

v=0 An address space with no virtualization support.

Hardware virtualization mode is the hardware-accelerated virtualization support for PowerPC. In hardware virtualization mode, the complete address space is empty and under control of the pager thread. The thread's state is extended by the privileged PowerPC processor.

Output Parameters

control

v=1



Indicates if enabling the requested virtualization mode has succeeded (v = 1). Zero if v = 0 in the input parameter.

PowerPC HVM Control Transfer Items

GPR Group 0 CtrlXferItem (id = 2)

R15 (32)			
<u>:</u>			
R2 (32)			MR_{i+3}
R1 (32)			MR_{i+2}
R0 (32)			MR_{i+1}
0xFFFF (20)	2 (8)	110C	MR_i

GPR Group 1 CtrlXferItem (id = 3)

R31 (32)			MR_{i+16}
<u>:</u>			
R18 (32)			MR_{i+3}
R17 (32)			MR_{i+2}
R16 (32)			MR_{i+1}
0xFFFF (20)	3 (8)	110C	MR_i

GPR Extended CtrlXferItem (id = 4)

IP ₍₃₂₎			
CR (32)			MR_{i+4}
CTR (32)			MR_{i+3}
CR (32)			
XER (32)			MR_{i+1}
0x1F (20)	4 (8)	110C	MR_i

MMU CtrlXferItem (id = 6)

IP (32)			
CR (32)			MR_{i+4}
CTR (32)			
CR (32)			MR_{i+2}
XER (32)			MR_{i+1}
0x1F (20)	6 (8)	110C	MR_i

Virtualization Fault Protocol

The virtualization protocol is defined between a VCPU thread and its registered pager thread. It substitutes the page fault and exception protocol used for normal threads. Virtualization fault messages are sent to the pager on events related to virtualization that are not handled directly by the hardware or by the L4 microkernel. By default, the kernel will append the fault-specific state specified below when sending kernel messages. Like with the normal fault protocols (see Section 7, the kernel will append additional control transfer items upon requests. Requests to add or remove control transfer items protocol are performed using the EXCHANGEREGISTERS system call and appropriate control transfer configuration items (see Section 2.3).

Virtualization Fault

From Pager:

guest address / instruction info (32)				
instruction length (32)				
fault qualification (32)				
$-9 - faultID_{(16)}$ $0_{(4)}$ $t = 0_{(6)}$ $u = 3_{(6)}$				MR_0

fault ID Implementation-specific fault identifiier. For Intel VT-x, the identifier cor-

responds to the VM exit reason.

fault quali-Additional information about the cause of exits.

fication instruction The length of the faulting instruction. length

Guest linear address / Additional information about the faulting instruction operand info

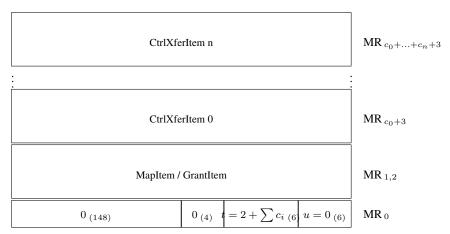
For a read fault, the virtual value of the faulting register, if the register is

part of the VCPU state.

Virtualization Fault Reply

From Pager:

value



Appendix D

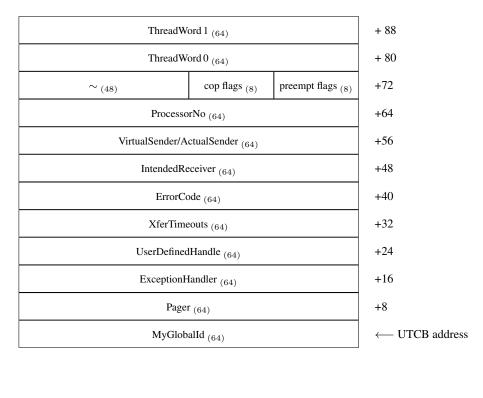
PowerPC64 Interface

156 VIRTUAL REGISTERS

D.1 Virtual Registers [powerpc64]

Thread Control Registers (TCRs)

TCRs are mapped to memory locations. They are implemented as part of the ppc64-specific user-level thread control block (UTCB). The address of the current thread's UTCB is identical to the thread's local ID, and is thus immutable. Setting the UTCB address of an active thread via ThreadControl is similar to deletion and re-creation. There is a fixed correlation between the UtcbLocation parameter when invoking ThreadControl and the UTCB address. The UTCB address is provided in the abi thread register r13 at application start. UTCB objects of the current thread can then be accessed as any other memory object. UTCBs of other threads must not be accessed, even if they are physically accessible. ThreadWord0 and ThreadWord1 are free to be used by systems software (e.g., IDL compilers). The kernel associates no semantics with these words.





The TCR *MyLocalId* is not part of the UTCB. On PowerPC64 it is identical with the UTCB address and can be loaded from register *r13*.

Message Registers (MRs)

Message registers MR $_0$ through MR $_9$ map to local registers in the processor's general purpose register file for IPC and LIPC calls, otherwise they are located in the UTCB. The remaining message registers map to memory locations in the UTCB. MR $_0$ starts at byte offset 512 in the UTCB, and successive message registers follow in memory.

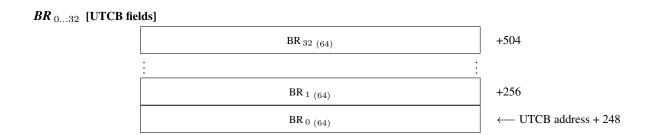
VIRTUAL REGISTERS 157

MR ₀₉	MR 9	r23
	MR ₈	r22
	MR 7	r21
	MR ₆	r20
	MR 5	r19
	MR ₄	r18
	MR 3	r17
	MR 2	r16
	MR ₁	r15
	MR ₀	r14



Buffer Registers (BRs)

The buffer registers map to memory locations in the UTCB. BR 0 is at byte offset 248 in the UTCB, BR 1 at byte offset 256, etc.



UTCB Memory With Undefined Semantics

The kernel will associate no semantics with memory located at UTCB address + 80... UTCB address + 247. The application can use this memory as thread local storage, e.g., for implementing the L4 API. Note, however, that the memory contents within this region may be overwritten during a system-call operating on message registers.

All undefined UTCB memory which is not covered by the above mentioned region may have kernel defined semantics.

D.2 Systemcalls [powerpc64]

The system-calls which are invoked by the bctrl or instruction take the target of the calls from the system call link fields in the kernel interface page (see page 2). Each system-call link value specifies an address relative to the kernel interface page's base address. One may invoke the system calls with any instruction that branches to the appropriate target, as long as the return-address is contained in lr.

The locations of the system-calls are fixed during the life of an application, although they may change outside of the life of an application. It is not valid to prelink an application against a set of system call locations. The official locations are always provided in the KIP.

The system call definitions below only specify the contexts of the general purpose registers. Except for the KERNELINTERFACE system-call, the contents of user accessible state registers are assumed to be scratched. The floating-point registers are assumed to be preserved accross system calls.

KERNELINTERFACE [Slow Systemcall]

_	r0r2	- KernelInterface $ ightarrow$	r0r2	=
_	r3		r3	KIP base address
_	r4		r4	API Version
_	r5	tlbia	r5	API Flags
_	r6		r6	Kernel ID
_	r7r31		r7r31	=
_	lr		lr	=
_	ctr		ctr	=
_	cr		cr	≡
_	xer		xer	=

For this system-call, all registers other than the output registers are preserved.

EXCHANGEREGISTERS [Systemcall]

_	r0	- Exchange Registers $ ightarrow$	r0	\sim
_	r1		r1	≡
_	r2		r2	≡
dest	r3	betrl	r3	result
control	r4		r4	control
SP	r5		r5	SP
IP	r6		r6	IP
FLAGS	r7		r7	FLAGS
UserDefinedHandle	r8		r8	User De fined Handle
pager	r9		r9	pager
isLocal	r10		r10	isLocal
_	r11, r12		r11, r12	\sim
UTCB	r13		r13	UTCB
_	r14r29		r14r29	\sim
_	r30, r31		r30, r31	=
_	lr		lr	~
ExchangeRegisters	ctr		ctr	\sim
_	cr		cr	\sim
_	xer		xer	\sim

[&]quot;FLAGS" refers to the user-modifiable powerpc64 processor flags that are held in the msr register.

THREADCONTROL [Privileged Systemcall]

_	r0	- Thread Control $ ightarrow$	r0	\sim
_	r1		r1	\equiv
_	r2		r2	\equiv
dest	r3	bctrl	r3	result
space	r4		r4	\sim
scheduler	r5		r5	\sim
pager	r6		r6	\sim
UtcbLocation	r7		r7	\sim
_	r8r12		r8r12	\sim
UTCB	r13		r13	UTCB
_	r14r29		r14r29	\sim
_	r30, r31		r30, r31	\equiv
_	lr		lr	\sim
ThreadControl	ctr		ctr	\sim
_	cr		cr	\sim
_	xer		xer	\sim

SYSTEMCLOCK [Systemcall]

_	r0	- SystemClock $ ightarrow$	r0	\sim
_	r1		r1	\equiv
_	r2		r2	\equiv
_	r3	bctrl	r3	clock
_	r4r12		r4r12	\sim
UTCB	r13		r13	UTCB
_	r14r29		r14r29	\sim
_	r30, r31		r30, r31	\equiv
_	lr		lr	\sim
SystemClock	ctr		ctr	\sim
_	cr		cr	\sim
_	xer		xer	\sim

THREADSWITCH [Systemcall]

_	r0	- ThreadSwitch $ ightarrow$	r0	\sim
_	r1		r1	\equiv
_	r2		r2	\equiv
dest	r3	bctrl	r3	\sim
_	r4r12		r4r12	\sim
UTCB	r13		r13	UTCB
_	r14r29		r14r29	\sim
_	r30, r31		r30, r31	\equiv
_	lr		lr	\sim
ThreadSwitch	ctr		ctr	\sim
_	cr		cr	\sim
_	xer		xer	\sim

SCHEDULE [Systemcall]

_	r0	- Schedule $ ightarrow$	r0	\sim
_	r1		r1	=
_	r2		r2	=
dest	r3	betrl	r3	result
time control	r4		r4	time control
processor control	r5		r5	\sim
priority	r6		r6	\sim
preemption control	r7		r7	\sim
_	r8r12		r8r12	\sim
UTCB	r13		r13	UTCB
_	r14r29		r14r29	\sim
_	r30, r31		r30, r31	=
_	lr		lr	\sim
Schedule	ctr		ctr	\sim
_	cr		cr	\sim
_	xer		xer	\sim

IPC [Systemcall]

_	r0	- Ipc $ ightarrow$	r0	\sim
_	r1	_	r1	=
_	r2		r2	=
to	r3	bctrl	r3	from
FromSpecifier	r4		r4	\sim
Timeouts	r5		r5	\sim
_	r6r12		r6r12	\sim
UTCB	r13		r13	UTCB
MR_{0}	r14		r14	MR_{0}
MR_{1}	r15		r15	MR_{1}
MR_2	r16		r16	MR_2
MR_3	r17		r17	MR_3
MR_4	r18		r18	MR_4
MR_{5}	r19		r19	MR_{5}
MR_{6}	r20		r20	MR_{6}
MR 7	r21		r21	MR_{7}
MR ₈	r22		r22	MR_{8}
MR_{9}	r23		r23	MR_{9}
_	r24r29		r24r29	~
_	r30, r31		r30, r31	=
_	lr		lr	~
Ipc	ctr		ctr	~
_	cr		cr	\sim
_	xer		xer	\sim

LIPC [Systemcall]

_	r0	- Lipc $ ightarrow$	r0	\sim
_	r1		r1	\equiv
_	r2		r2	\equiv
to	r3	bctrl	r3	from
FromSpecifier	r4		r4	\sim
Timeouts	r5		r5	\sim
_	r6r12		r6r12	\sim
UTCB	r13		r13	UTCB
MR_{0}	r14		r14	MR_{0}
MR_{1}	r15		r15	MR_{1}
MR_2	r16		r16	MR_2
MR_3	r17		r17	MR_3
$MR_{\ 4}$	r18		r18	MR_4
MR_{5}	r19		r19	MR_{5}
MR_{6}	r20		r20	MR_{6}
MR_{7}	r21		r21	MR_{7}
MR_{8}	r22		r22	MR_{8}
MR_{9}	r23		r23	MR_{9}
_	r24r29		r24r29	\sim
_	r30, r31		r30, r31	=
_	lr		lr	\sim
Lipc	ctr		ctr	\sim
_	cr		cr	\sim
_	xer		xer	\sim

UNMAP [Systemcall]

_	r0	- Unmap $ ightarrow$	r0	\sim
_	r1		r1	\equiv
_	r2		r2	\equiv
control	r3	betrl	r3	\sim
_	r4r12		r4r12	\sim
UTCB	r13		r13	UTCB
_	r14r29		r14r29	\sim
_	r30, r31		r30, r31	\equiv
_	lr		lr	\sim
Unmap	ctr		ctr	\sim
_	cr		cr	\sim
_	xer		xer	\sim

SPACECONTROL [Privileged Systemcall]

```
- \, \textbf{Space Control} \rightarrow
                             r0
                             r1
                                                                     r1
                                                                                 \equiv
                             r2
                                                                     r2
                                                                                 \equiv
          Space Specifier
                            r3
                                                   bctrl
                                                                                 result
                                                                     r3
                  control r4
                                                                                 control
KernelInterfacePageArea
                            r5
                                                                     r5
                UtcbArea
                                                                     r6
               Redirector
                            r7
                                                                     r7
                            r8...r12
                                                                     r8...r12
                   UTCB
                                                                      r13
                                                                                 UTCB
                            r13
                            r14...r29
                                                                     r14...r29
                             r30, r31
                                                                     r30, r31
                                                                     lr
            Space Control
                                                                     cr
                             cr
                                                                     xer
```

PROCESSORCONTROL [Privileged Systemcall]

_	r0	- Processor Control $ ightarrow$	r0	\sim
_	r1		r1	\equiv
_	r2		r2	\equiv
ProcessorNo	r3	bctrl	r3	result
InternalFreq	r4		r4	\sim
ExternalFreq	r5		r5	\sim
voltage	r6		r6	\sim
_	r7r12		r7r12	\sim
UTCB	r13		r13	UTCB
_	r14r29		r14r29	\sim
_	r30, r31		r30, r31	\equiv
_	lr		lr	\sim
ProcessorControl	ctr		ctr	\sim
_	cr		cr	\sim
_	xer		xer	\sim

MEMORYCONTROL [Privileged Systemcall]

_	r0	- Memory Control $ ightarrow$	r0	\sim
_	r1		r1	\equiv
_	r2		r2	\equiv
control	r3	bctrl	r3	result
$attribute_0$	r4		r4	\sim
$attribute_1$	r5		r5	\sim
$attribute_2$	r6		r6	\sim
$attribute_3$	r7		r7	\sim
_	r8r12		r8r12	\sim
UTCB	r13		r13	UTCB
_	r14r29		r14r29	\sim
_	r30, r31		r30, r31	\equiv
_	lr		lr	\sim
MemoryControl	ctr		ctr	\sim
_	cr		cr	\sim
_	xer		xer	\sim

MEMORY ATTRIBUTES 163

D.3 Memory Attributes [powerpc64]

The powerpc64 architecture supports the following memory/cache attribute values, to be used with the MEMORYCONTROL system-call: $\frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{1}{2} \right) = \frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{1}{2} \right) \left(\frac{1}$

attribute	value
Default	0
Uncached	1
Coherent	2

The default attributes depend on the platform and not all modes are defined for all processors.

D.4 Exception Message Format [powerpc64]

System Call Trap

System Call Trap Message to Exception Handler

Flags (64)	MR 12
SP (64)	MR 11
IP (64)	MR 10
r0 ₍₆₄₎	MR 9
r10 ₍₆₄₎	MR ₈
r9 ₍₆₄₎	MR 7
r8 ₍₆₄₎	MR 6
r7 ₍₆₄₎	MR 5
r6 ₍₆₄₎	MR 4
r5 ₍₆₄₎	MR ₃
r4 (64)	MR $_2$
r3 ₍₆₄₎	MR 1
$\begin{array}{ c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c$	MR_0

When user code executes the PowerPC sc instruction, the kernel delivers the system call trap message to the exception handler. The kernel preserves only partial user state when handling a sc instruction. State is preserved similarly for the inclusive set of saved registers according the 64-bit PowerPC ELF ABI for function calls.

The non-volatile registers are: r1, r2, r13 ... r31, CR2 ... CR4

The volatile registers are: r0, r3 ... r12, LR, CTR, XER, CR0, CR1, CR5 ... CR7

Thread virtual registers may also be clobbered.

Generic Traps

Generic Trap Message To Exception Handler

ErrorAddress (64)				
LocalID (64)	MR ₆			
ErrorCode (64)				
ExceptionNo (64)				
Flags (64)				
SP ₍₆₄₎				
IP (64)				
$\begin{array}{ c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c$	MR ₀			

The kernel synthesizes exception messages in response to architecture specific events. Some traps are handled by the kernel and therefore do not generate exception messages. Exceptions that provide an error address use the *ErrorAddress* register and specify 7 Untyped words, otherwise only 6 Untyped words will be sent. The kernel preserves all user state, including thread virtual registers.

For some exceptions, The following is a table of values for the Generic Trap *ExceptionNo*:

Exception	ExceptionNo	ErrorCode	Delivered	ErrorAddress
System Reset	0x100	-	No	-
Machine Check	0x200	_	No	-
DSI	0x300	DSISR	If not paging related	Yes
ISI	0x400	_	If not paging related	No
Interrupt	0x500	_	No	No
Alignment	0x600	DSISR	Yes	Yes
Program	0x700	_	Yes	Yes
FPU Unavailable	0x800	-	No	-
Decrementer	0x900	_	No	-
System Call	0xc00	-	No	-
Trace	0xd00	_	If kdb not using	No
FPU Assist	0xe00	_	Yes	No
Performance	0xf00	-	Yes	No
Breakpoint	0x1300	_	Yes	No
Soft Patch	0x1500	-	Yes	No
Maintenance	0x1600	-	Yes	No
Instrumentation	0x2000	-	Yes	No

Note, not all of these exceptions will be delivered via exception IPC. Some will be handled by the kernel. Delivered exceptions are indicated in the last column of the table above.

166 BOOTING

D.5 Booting [powerpc64]

IBM OpenFirmware Machines

L4 must be loaded into memory at the physical location defined by the kernel's ELF header. It can be started with virtual addressing enabled or disabled. Execution of L4 must begin at the entry point defined by the kernel's ELF header.

When entering the kernel, the registers which support in-register file parameter passing, R3–R10 according to the Open-Power ABI, must be cleared for upwards compatibility, except as noted below. All other registers in the register file are undefined at kernel entry.

The kernel may use OpenFirmware for debug console I/O. To support OpenFirmware I/O, the OpenFirmware virtual mode client call-back address must be passed to the kernel in register R5, and OpenFirmware must be prepared to handle client call-backs using virtual addressing???. In all other cases, register R5 must be zero.

The boot loader must copy the OpenFirmware device tree to memory, and record its physical location in a memory descriptor of the kernel interface page. The copy of the device tree must include the package handles of the device tree nodes

Appendix E

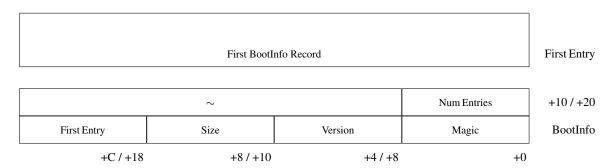
Generic BootInfo

168 GENERIC BOOTINFO

E.1 Generic BootInfo [Data Structure]

The generic BootInfo structure contains boot loader specific data such as loaded modules or files, location of system tables, etc. The data structure can be located anywhere in memory, but must be aligned at a word size.

The BootInfo structure is a pure boot loader specific object. That is, the kernel does not associate any semantics with its contents. A boot loader is free to choose whether to provide a BootInfo structure or not. Starting a system without a generic BootInfo structure is perfectly valid.



The base address of the bootinfo structure is specified by the Bootinfo field in the kernel interface page (see page 4). Note that the base address as specified by the BootInfo field is a physical address. An application running on virtual memory must determine the location of the BootInfo structure within its own address space by other means.

BootInfo Description

Magic	The magic number 0x14B0021D. The magic also determines the endianess of the structure (i.e., the value 0x1D02B014 indicates that the endian is wrong). The word size of the BootInfo structure is defined by the word size specified in the kernel interface page (see page 3).
Version	API version of the BootInfo structure. This document describes version 1. Note that any changes in the BootInfo records themselves do not influence the version in the main BootInfo structure. This enables BootInfo records to be added or modified without introducing major incompatibilities with a program that parses the BootInfo structure. Only the added/modified BootInfo record types are influenced by the update.
Size	The size (in bytes) of the complete BootInfo structure, including all BootInfo records and data referenced by these records.
First Entry	Points to the first BootInfo record. <i>First Entry</i> is given as an address relative to the base address of the BootInfo structure itself.
Num Entries	Number of BootInfo records in the BootInfo structure.

Generic BootInfo Record

The exact structure of a BootInfo record is determined by the type of the record. Only the three first words of the record are defined for all BootInfo record types.

Offset Next	Version	Туре
+8 / +10	+4 / +8	+0

Type Specifies the type of the BootInfo record.

GENERIC BOOTINFO 169

Version

Specifies the API version of the BootInfo record type. Increasing the version of a BootInfo record type does not also require an increase in the main BootInfo version. Later versions of a BootInfo record are guaranteed to be backwards compatible with older versions.

Offset Next

The offset (in bytes) to the next BootInfo record. Note that the offset may vary from record to record, even for records of the same type. This enables the boot loader to have variable length records, place data in between records, or otherwise align records for ease of implementation. It is wrong to assume that the offset associated with a particular version of a record type is constant.

Convenience Programming Interface

#include <14/bootinfo.h>

struct **BOOTREC** { Word raw [*] }

Bool BootInfo_Valid (void* BootInfo)

Checks whether specified BootInfo structure is valid or not (i.e., whether the magic number and the version number are correct).

Word BootInfo_Size (void* BootInfo)

Delivers the size (in bytes) of the BootInfo structure. It is assumed that *BootInfo* specifies a valid BootInfo structure.

BootRec* BootInfo_FirstEntry (void* BootInfo)

Delivers the first BootInfo record of the BootInfo structure. It is assumed that *BootInfo* specifies a valid BootInfo structure.

Word BootInfo Entries (void* BootInfo)

Delivers the number of BootInfo records in the BootInfo structure. It is assumed that *BootInfo* specifies a valid BootInfo structure.

Word Type (BootRec* BootRec)

[BootRec_Type]

Delivers the type of the BootInfo record.

BootRec* Next (BootRec* BootRec)

[BootRec_Next]

Delivers the next BootInfo record. The value returned by the last BootInfo record in the BootInfo structure is undefined.

170 BOOTINFO RECORDS

E.2 BootInfo Records [BootInfo]

BootInfo records can be listed in any order. This section lists currently defined BootInfo records. A program encountering an unknown BootInfo record can skip past the record using the ubiquitous *Offset Next* field.

Simple Module

The Simple Module BootInfo record specifies a binary file loaded into main memory by the boot loader.

		Cmdline Off	Size	+10 / +20
Start	Offset Next	version = 1	type = 0x1	
+C / +18	+8 / +10	+4 / +8	+0	-

Start Physical address of first byte in loaded module.

Size Size of loaded module (in bytes).

Cmdline Off Address of command line associated with loaded module, or 0 if no command line exists. Address is specified relative to base address of current BootInfo record.

Simple Executable The Simple Executable BootInfo record specifies an executable file which has been loaded into main memory and relocated by the boot loader. The record can only specify simple executables with single code, data, and bss sections.

Cmdline Off	Label	Flags	Initial IP	+30 / +60
Bss.Size	Bss.Vstart	Bss.Pstart	Data.Size	+20 / +40
Data.Vstart	Data.Pstart	Text.Size	Text.Vstart	+10 / +20
Text.Pstart	Offset Next	version = 1	type = 0x2	
+C/+18	+8 / +10	+4/+8	+0	•

Pstart Physical address of first byte in code/data/bss section of the loaded executable.

Virtual address of first byte in code/data/bss section of the loaded executable.

Size of code/data/bss section (in bytes).

Initial IP Virtual address of entry point for loaded executable.

Flags Flags for the loaded executable (defined by boot loader or application programs). Note that regular applications may not necessarily have write permissions on the Flags field.

Label Freely available word (defined by boot loader or application programs). Note that regular applications may not necessarily have write permissions on the Label field.

Cmdline Off Address of command line associated with loaded executable, or 0 if no command line exists. Address is specified relative to base address of current BootInfo record.

BOOTINFO RECORDS 171

EFI Tables

The *EFI Tables* BootInfo record specifies the location and size of the EFI memory map, and the location of the EFI system table.

Memdesc Version	Memdesc Size	Memmap Size	Memmap	+10 / +20
Systab	Offset Next	version = 1	type = 0x101	
+C / +18	+8 / +10	+4 / +8	+0	

Systab Physical address of EFI system table, or 0 if EFI system table is not present.

Memmap Physical address of EFI memory map. Undefined if Memmap Size = 0.

Memmap Size Size (in bytes) of the EFI memory map, or 0 if EFI memory map is not present.

Memdesc Size Size (in bytes) of descriptor entries in the EFI memory map. Undefined if Memmap Size = 0.

Memdesc Version Version of descriptor entries in the EFI memory map. Undefined if Memmap Size = 0.

Multiboot info

The Multiboot info BootInfo record specifies the location of the first byte in the multiboot header.

Multiboot Addr	Offset Next	version = 1	type = 0x102
+C / +18	+8 / +10	+4 / +8	+0

Multiboot Addr Physical address of first byte in multiboot header.

Convenience Programming Interface

#include <14/bootinfo.h>

Word BootInfo_Module

Word BootInfo_SimpleExec

Word BootInfo_EFITables

Word BootInfo_Multiboot

Word Module_Start (BootRec* b)

Word Module_Size (BootRec* b)

Delivers the start and size of the specified boot module.

char* Module_Cmdline (BootRec* b)

Delivers the command line of the specified boot module, or 0 if command line does not exist.

Word SimpleExec_TextPstart (BootRec* b)

Word SimpleExec_TextVstart (BootRec* b)

 $Word \ \textit{SimpleExec_TextSize} \ \ (BootRec*b)$

Word SimpleExec_DataPstart (BootRec* b)

Word SimpleExec_DataVstart (BootRec*b)

Word SimpleExec DataSize (BootRec*b)

Word SimpleExec_BssPstart (BootRec* b)

Word SimpleExec_BssVstart (BootRec* b)

172 BOOTINFO RECORDS

Word SimpleExec_BssSize (BootRec*b)

Delivers physical start address, virtual start address, and size of the code/data/bss section of the specified executable.

Word SimpleExec InitialIP (BootRec* b)

Delivers virtual address of entry point for the specified executable.

Word SimpleExec_Flags (BootRec* b)

void SimpleExec_Set_Flags (BootRec* b, Word w)

Delivers/sets the flags field for the specified executable.

Word SimpleExec_Label (BootRec*b)

void SimpleExec_Set_Label (BootRec* b, Word w)

Delivers/sets the label field for the specified executable.

char* SimpleExec_Cmdline (BootRec* b)

Delivers the command line of the specified executable, or 0 if command line does not exist.

Word **EFI_Systab** (BootRec* b)

Delivers the EFI system table, or 0 if system table not present.

Word **EFI_Memmap** (BootRec* b)

Word **EFI_MemmapSize** (BootRec* b)

Word EFI_MemdescSize (BootRec* b)

Word **EFI_MemdescVersion** (BootRec* b)

Delivers location of the EFI memory map, size of memory map, size of memory map descriptor entries, and version of memory map descriptor entries. If *EFI_MemmapSize* () delivers 0, the other return values are undefined.

Word MBI_Address (BootRec* b)

Delivers the physical location of the first byte in the multiboot header.

Appendix F

Development Remarks

These remarks illuminate the design process from version 2 to version 4.

F.1 Exception Handling

The current model decided upon for exception handling in L4 is to associate an exception handler thread with each thread in the system (see page 72). This model was chosen because it allowed us to handle exceptions generically without introducing any new concepts into the API. It also closely resembles the current page fault handling model.

Another model for exception handling is to use callbacks. Using this model an instruction pointer for a callback function and a pointer to an exception state save area is associated with each thread. Upon catching an exception the kernel stores the cause of the exception into the save area and transfers execution to the exception callback function.

It is evident that the callback model can be faster than the IPC model because the callback model may require only one control transfer into the kernel whereas the IPC model will require at least two. Nevertheless, the IPC model was chosen because it introduces no new mechanisms into the kernel, and we are currently not aware of any real life scenario where the extra performance gains you very much. There exists a challenge to prove these claims wrong. See http://l4hq.org/fun/ for the rules of the challenge.

Table of Procs, Types, and Constants

	used system call	page
AbortIpc_and_stop (ThreadId t) ThreadState	EXCHANGEREGISTERS	22
AbortIpc_and_stop (ThreadId t, Word& sp, ip, flags) ThreadState	EXCHANGEREGISTERS	22
AbortReceive_and_stop (ThreadId t) ThreadState	EXCHANGEREGISTERS	22
AbortReceive_and_stop (ThreadId t, Word& sp, ip, flags) ThreadState	EXCHANGEREGISTERS	22
AbortSend_and_stop (ThreadId t) ThreadState	EXCHANGEREGISTERS	22
AbortSend_and_stop (ThreadId t, Word& sp, ip, flags) ThreadState	EXCHANGEREGISTERS	22
Accept (Acceptor a, MsgBuffer& b) void	-none-	63
Accept (Acceptor a) void	-none-	63
Accepted () Acceptor	-none-	63
Acceptor data type	-n/a-	62
+ (Acceptor l, r) Acceptor	-none-	62
- (Acceptor l, r) Acceptor	-none-	63
ActualSender () ThreadId	-none-	17
ActualSender () ThreadId	-none-	70
Address (Fpage f) Word	-none-	41
AllocateNewCacheLines CacheAllocationHint const	<i>−n/a−</i>	106
AllocateNewCacheLines CacheAllocationHint const	<i>−n/a−</i>	131
AllocateOnlyNewL1CacheLines CacheAllocationHint const	<i>−n/a−</i>	106
AllocateOnlyNewL1CacheLines CacheAllocationHint const	<i>−n/a−</i>	131
anylocalthread ThreadId const	<i>−n/a−</i>	15
anythread ThreadId const	<i>−n/a−</i>	15
ApiFlags () Word	-none-	8
ApiVersion () Word	-none-	8
Append (MsgBuffer& b, StringItem * s) void	-none-	63
Append (MsgBuffer& b, StringItem s) void	-none-	63
Append (Msg& msg, FPURegsCtrlXferItem c) void	-none-	110
Append (Msg& msg, GPRegsCtrlXferItem c) void	-none-	110
Append (Msg& msg, GrantItem g) void	-none-	53
Append (Msg& msg, MapItem m) void	-none-	53
Append (Msg& msg, StringItem s) void	-none-	53
Append (Msg& msg, StringItem& s) void	-none-	53
Append (Msg& msg, Word w) void	-none-	53
ArchitectureSpecificMemoryType Word const	<i>−n/a−</i>	9
AssociateInterrupt (ThreadId InterruptThread, InterruptHandler) Word	-none-	25
BootInfo_EFITables Word const	<i>−n/a−</i>	171
BootInfo_Entries (void* BootInfo) Word	-none-	169
BootInfo_FirstEntry (void* BootInfo) BootRec*	-none-	169
BootInfo_Module Word const	<i>−n/a−</i>	171
BootInfo_Multiboot Word const	<i>−n/a−</i>	171
BootInfo_SimpleExec Word const	<i>−n/a−</i>	171
BootInfo_Size (void* BootInfo) Word	-none-	169
BootInfo_Valid (void* BootInfo) Bool	-none-	169
BootInfo (void* KernelInterface) Word	-none-	9
BootLoaderSpecificMemoryType Word const	<i>−n/a−</i>	9
BootRec data type	-n/a-	169
CacheAllocationHint data type	-n/a-	60
== (CacheAllocationHint l, r) Bool	-none-	61
CacheAllocationHint (StringItem s) CacheAllocationHint	-none-	61
CachingEnabledMemory Word const	<i>−n/a−</i>	144

	used system call	page
CachingInhibitedMemory Word const	-n/a-	144
Call (ThreadId to) MsgTag	IPC	68
Call (ThreadId to, Time SndTimeout, RcvTimeout) MsgTag	IPC	69
Clear (MsgBuffer& b) void	-none-	63
Clear (Msg& msg) void Clock data type	–none– –n/a–	53 28
- (Clock l, int r) Clock	-none-	28
+ (Clock l, int r) Clock	-none-	28
$\leq = (\operatorname{Clock} l, r) \operatorname{Bool}$	-none-	28
< (Clock l, r) Bool	-none-	28
== (Clock l, r) Bool >= (Clock l, r) Bool	-none- -none-	28 28
> (Clock l, r) Bool	-none-	28
- (Clock l, r) Clock	-none-	28
+ (Clock l, r) Clock	-none-	28
– (Clock l, Word64 r) Clock	-none-	28
+ (Clock I, Word64 r) Clock	-none-	28
Clr_CopFlag (Word n) void Clr_CopFlag (Word n) void	-none-	17 73
CompleteAddressSpace Fpage const	–none– –n/a–	41
CompoundString (StringItem& s) Bool	-none-	60
ConventionalMemoryType Word const	<i>−n/a−</i>	9
CtrlXferItem (CtrlXferItem& c) Bool	-none-	58
CtrlXferItem data type	<i>−n/a−</i>	58
CtrlXferItemInit (CtrlXferItem& c, Word id) void	-none-	58 62
CtrlXferItemsAcceptor Acceptor const DeassociateInterrupt (ThreadId InterruptThread) Word	–n/a– –none–	25
Dedicated Memory Type Word const	-none- -n/a-	9
DefaultMemory Word const	-n/a-	107
DefaultMemory Word const	-n/a-	132
DefaultMemory Word const	<i>−n/a−</i>	144
DefaultMemory Word const	<i>−n/a−</i>	77
DisablePreemption () Bool DisablePreemptionFaultException () Bool	-none-	37 37
DoNotAllocateNewCacheLines CacheAllocationHint const	–none– –n/a–	106
DoNotAllocateNewCacheLines CacheAllocationHint const	-n/a-	131
EFI_MemdescSize (BootRec* b) Word	-none-	172
EFI_MemdescVersion (BootRec* b) Word	-none-	172
EFI_Memmap (BootRec* b) Word	–none–	172
EFI_MemmapSize (BootRec* b) Word EFI_Systab (BootRec* b) Word	-none-	172 172
EnablePreemption () Bool	-none- -none-	37
EnablePreemptionFaultException () Bool	-none-	37
ErrInvalidParam Word const	-n/a-	36
ErrInvalidParam Word const	-n/a-	77
ErrInvalidScheduler Word const	-n/a-	25
ErrInvalidSpace Word const	-n/a-	25
ErrInvalidSpace Word const ErrInvalidThread Word const	−n/a− −n/a−	47 22
ErrInvalidThread Word const	-n/a-	25
ErrInvalidThread Word const	-n/a-	35
ErrKipArea Word const	-n/a-	47
ErrNoMem Word const	-n/a-	25
ErrNoPrivilege Word const	-n/a-	25
ErrNoPrivilege Word const ErrNoPrivilege Word const	-n/a- -n/a-	35 47
ErrNoPrivilege Word const	<i>−n/a−</i> <i>−n/a−</i>	75
ErrNoPrivilege Word const	-n/a-	77
ErrorCode () Word	-none-	17
ErrorCode () Word	-none-	22
ErrorCode () Word	-none-	25
ErrorCode () Word ErrorCode () Word	-none-	35 47
LITOTOUGE () HOLD	-none-	4/

	used system call	page
ErrorCode () Word	-none-	69
ErrorCode () Word	-none-	75
ErrorCode () Word	-none-	77
ErrUtcbArea Word const	-n/a-	25
ErrUtcbArea Word const	-n/a-	47
ExceptionHandler () ThreadId	-none-	17 72
ExceptionHandler () ThreadId ExchangeRegisters (ThreadId dest, Word control, sp, ip, flags, UserDe-	<pre>-none- EXCHANGEREGISTERS</pre>	21
finedHandle, ThreadId pager, Word& old_control, old_sp, old_ip, old_flags, old_UserDefinedHandle, ThreadId& old_pager) ThreadId	EACHANGEREOISTERS	21
eXecutable Word const	-n/a-	41
ExternalFreq (ProcDesc& p) Word	-none-	10
Feature (void* KernelInterface, Word num) char*	-none-	9
Flush (Fpage f) Fpage	UNMAP	44
Flush (Word n, Fpage& [n] fpages) void	UNMAP	44
Fpage data type (Fpage f Word Access Pichte) Fpage	-n/a-	40 41
- (Fpage f, Word AccessRights) Fpage	-none-	41
+ (Fpage f, Word AccessRights) Fpage FpageLog2 (Word BaseAddress, int Log2FpageSize < 64) Fpage	–none– –none–	41
Fpage (Word BaseAddress, int FpageSize > 1K) Fpage	-none-	41
FPURegsCtrlXferItem data type	-none- -n/a-	109
FullyAccessible Word const	-n/a-	41
Get (Msg& msg, Word t, CtrlXferItem& c) Word	-none-	54
Get (Msg& msg, Word t, GrantItem& g) Word	-none-	54
Get (Msg& msg, Word t, MapItem& m) Word	-none-	54
Get (Msg& msg, Word t, StringItem& s) Word	-none-	54
Get (Msg& msg, Word& ut, {MapItem, GrantItem, StringItem}& Items) void	-none-	53
Get (Msg& msg, Word u) Word	-none-	54
Get (Msg& msg, Word u, Word& w) void	-none-	54
GetStatus (Fpage f) Fpage	-none-	44
GlobalId (ThreadId t) ThreadId	EXCHANGEREGISTERS	15
Globalld (ThreadId t) ThreadId Globalld (Word threading, yession) ThreadId	EXCHANGEREGISTERS	21
GlobalId (Word threadno, version) ThreadId	–none– –n/a–	15 144
GlobalMemory Word const GPRegsCtrlXferItem data type	-n/a-	109
GrantItem data type	-n/a-	57
GrantItem (Grane f, Word SndBase) GrantItem	-none-	57
GrantItem (GrantItem g) Bool	-none-	57
GuardedMemory Word const	-n/a-	144
High (MemoryDesc& m) Word	-none-	9
IntendedReceiver () ThreadId	-none-	17
IntendedReceiver () ThreadId	-none-	69
InternalFreq (ProcDesc& p) Word	-none-	10
IoFpageLog2 (Word BaseAddress, int Log2FpageSize <= 16) Fpage	-none-	130
IoFpageLog2 (Word BasePort, int Log2FpageSize <= 16) Fpage	-none-	103
IoFpagePort (Fpage f) Word	-none-	103
IoFpageSize (Fpage f) Word	-none-	103
IoFpageSizeLog2 (Fpage f) Word	-none-	103
IoFpage (Word BaseAddress, int FpageSize) Fpage	-none-	130
IoFpage (Word BasePort, int FpageSize) Fpage IpcFailed (MsgTag t) Bool	-none-	103 69
IpcPropagated (MsgTag t) Bool	–none– –none–	69
IpcRedirected (MsgTag t) Bool	-none-	69
IpcSucceeded (MsgTag t) Bool	-none-	69
Ipc (ThreadId to, FromSpecifier, Word Timeouts, ThreadId& from) MsgTag	IPC	68
IpcXcpu (MsgTag t) Bool	-none-	69
IsGlobalId (ThreadId t) Bool	-none-	15
IsIoFpage (Fpage f) Bool	-none-	103
IsLocalId (ThreadId t) Bool	-none-	15
IsNilFpage (Fpage f) Bool	-none-	41
IsNilThread (ThreadId t) Bool	-none-	15
IsVirtual (MemoryDesc& m) Bool	-none-	9
KernelGenDate (void* KernelInterface, Word& year, month, day) void	-none-	8

	used system call	page
KernelId () Word	none	8
KernelInterface () void*	<i>–none–</i> KernelInterface	8
KernelInterface (Word& ApiVersion, ApiFlags, KernelId) void *	KERNELINTERFACE	8
KernelSupplier (void* KernelInterface) Word	-none-	8
KernelVersionString (void* KernelInterface) char*	-none-	9
KernelVersion (void* KernelInterface) Word	-none-	8
KipAreaSizeLog2 (void* KernelInterface) Word	-none-	9
Label (Msg& msg) Word	-none-	53
Label (Msg Tag t) Word LargeSpace Word const	–none– –n/a–	52 105
Lcall (ThreadId to) MsgTag	LIPC	69
Lipc (ThreadId to, FromSpecifier, Word Timeouts, ThreadId& from) MsgTag	LIPC	68
LoadBR (int i , Word w) void	-none-	11
LoadBR (int i , Word w) void	-none-	63
LoadBRs (int i , k , Word& $[k]$) void	-none-	11
LoadBRs (int i, k , Word& $[k]$) void	-none-	63
LoadMR (int i , Word w) void LoadMR (int i , Word w) void	-none-	11 54
LoadMRs (int i , k , Word& $[k]$ w) void	–none– –none–	11
LoadMRs (int i, k , Word& $[k]$ w) void	-none-	54
Load (Msg& msg) void	-none-	53
LocalId (ThreadId t) ThreadId	EXCHANGEREGISTERS	15
LocalId (ThreadId t) ThreadId	EXCHANGEREGISTERS	21
LocalMemory Word const	<i>−n/a−</i>	144
Low (MemoryDesc& m) Word	-none-	9
LreplyWait (ThreadId to, ThreadId& from) MsgTag ManCrontHome (Acceptor a) Pool	LIPC	69 63
MapGrantItems (Acceptor a) Bool MapGrantItems (Fpage RcvWindow) Acceptor	–none– –none–	62
MapItem data type	-n/a-	55
MapItem (Fpage f, Word SndBase) MapItem	-none-	55
MapItem (MapItem m) Bool	-none-	56
MBI_Address (BootRec* b) Word	-none-	172
MemoryControl (Word control, Word& attributes[4]) Word	MEMORYCONTROL	77
MemoryDesc data type	<i>−n/a−</i>	8
MemoryDesc (void* KernelInterface, Word num) MemoryDesc* Module_Cmdline (BootRec* b) char*	-none-	9 171
Module_Size (BootRec* b) Word	–none– –none–	171
Module_Start (BootRec* b) Word	-none-	171
MsgBuffer data type	-n/a-	63
Msg data type	<i>−n/a−</i>	53
MsgTag data type	<i>−n/a−</i>	52
== (MsgTag l, r) Bool	-none-	52
MsgTag (Msg& msg) MsgTag	-none-	53
MsgTag () MsgTag + (MsgTag t, Word label) MsgTag	-none-	52 52
+= (Acceptor l, r) Acceptor	–none– –none–	62
-= (Acceptor l, r) Acceptor	-none-	63
!= (CacheAllocationHint l, r) Bool	-none-	61
! = (Clock l, r) Bool	-none-	28
-= (Fpage f, Word AccessRights) Fpage	-none-	41
+= (Fpage f, Word AccessRights) Fpage	-none-	41
!= (MsgTag l, r) Bool	-none-	52 52
+= (MsgTag t, Word label) MsgTag += (StringItem& dest, StringItem AdditionalSubstring) StringItem &	–none– –none–	52 60
+= (StringItem& dest, StringItem & AdditionalSubstringAddress) StringItem &	-none-	60
+= (StringItem s, CacheAllocationHint h) StringItem	-none-	61
!= (ThreadId l, r) Bool	-none-	15
!=(Time l, r) Bool	-none-	31
-= (Time l, r) Time	-none-	31
+= (Time l, r) Time	-none-	31
-= (Time I, Word r) Time	-none-	31
+= (Time l, Word r) Time MyGlobalId () ThreadId	-none-	31 15
1713 Oloballu () Till Caulu	-none-	13

MyGlobaltd () Threadld -none- 15		used system call	page
MyLocalld O Threadld -none- 15 15 MyLocalld O Threadld -none- 17 15 Myself () Threadld -none- 15 15 Myself () Threadld -none- 15 15 Myself () Threadld -none- 16 15 Myself () Threadld -none- 16 16 Mipage Fpage cons -none- 18 -none- 18 Markemory Descriptors (void* KernelInterface) Word -none- 18 -none- 18 Markemory Descriptors (void* KernelInterface) Word -none- 18 -none- 18 Markemory Descriptors (void* KernelInterface) Word -none- 18 -none- 18 Markemory Descriptors (void* KernelInterface) Word -none- 18 -none- 18 Markemory Descriptors (void* KernelInterface) Word -none- 18 -none- 18 Markemory Descriptors (void* KernelInterface) Word -none- 18 -non	MyClabalid () Throadid	2000	17
Mysell O Threadld -none— 15 Mysell O Threadld -none— 15 Mysell O Threadld -none— 15 Never Time const -none— 16 Never Time const -none— 16 Never BookRee' BootRee' BootRee' -none— 16 Nilage Finge const -none— 41 Nillage Finge const -none— 15 Nillage Finge const -none— 15 Nillage Finge const -none— 18 NumProcessor's (void* Kernellnterface) Word -none— 18 Ager Rights (void* Kernellnterface) Word -none— 18 Pager O'Threadld -none— 18 Pager O'Threadld to' Threadld -none— 12 Pager (Threadld to') Threadld -none— 12 Pager (Threadld to') Threadld -none— 12 Proches data type -none— 3 Proches (void * Kernellnterface) Word -none— 5 Proches (void * Kernellnterface) Word -none— 5 Proches (void * Kern			
Myself () ThreadId -none- 15 Never Time const -nha- 30 Never Time const -nha- 16 Never GookGe-BoolRec' BoolRec) -nha- 16 Nilpag Fegge const -nha- 15 Niltag Msg Fag const -nha- 15 Niltag Msg Fag const -nha- 41 NumMerory Descriptors (void* KernelInterface) Word -none- 18 NumMerory Descriptors (void* KernelInterface) Word -none- 18 PageRights (void* KernelInterface) Word -none- 18 Page () ThreadId -none- 17 Page () ThreadId () ThreadId -none- 17 Page () ThreadId () Bool -none- 17 Precention Pending () Bool -none- 18 Procebes (void* KernelInterface, Word num) ProcDesc* -none- 18 Processor (not Word -none- 19 Processor (not Word -none- 19 Processor (not Word -none- 19 Voltage) Word -none- 54 <	•		
Myself () Threadld			
Never Time conset -n/no= 169 Nilpage Fpage const -n/o= 169 Nilpage Fpage const -n/o= 52 nilthread Threadld const -n/o= 52 NoAccess Word const -n/o= 41 NumHrocessors (void* Kernellnterface) Word -none- 8 NumProcessors (void* Kernellnterface) Word -none- 8 Pager (Threadld to Threadld -none- 37 Procebes (void* Kernellnterface) Word -none- 37 Prochese (void* Kernellnterface) Word num) ProcDese* -none- 37 Prochese (void* Kernellnterface) Word num) ProcDese* -none- -none- Procebes (void* Kernellnterface) Word num) ProcDese* -none- -none- Procebes (void* Kernellnterface) Word num) ProcDese* -none- -none- Processor* Outrol (Word ProcessorNo, InternalFrequency, ExternalFrequency, ExternalFrequency, ExternalFrequency, Ordered Processor Ontrol (Word ProcessorNo) (Word ProcessorNo) (Word Proce			
Next (BootRec' BootRec) BootRec' -none -104 41 41 41 41 41 41 41			
Nilting MsgTag cons in ilthread Threadid const −n/a− 15 NoAccess Word const −n/a− 15 NoAccess Word const −n/a− 41 NumMemory Descriptors (void* KernelInterface) Word −n/one− 8 PageRights (void* KernelInterface) Word −n/one− 8 Pager () Threadid −n/one− 8 Pager (Threadid t) Threadid −n/one− 8 Page (Threadid t) Threadid −n/one− 8 Procobes (void* KernelInterface, Word num) ProcDesc* −n/one− 7 Procebes (void* KernelInterface, Word num) ProcDesc* −n/one− 75 Processor Ontrol (Word ProcessorNo, InternalFrequency, ExternalFrequency, voltage) Word −n/one− 75 Put (Msg& msg, Word I, int u, Word& [u] ut, int I, {Mapltem Grantltem Stringltem } vold −n/one− 53 Put (Msg& msg, Word I, Grantltem g) void −n/one− 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word I, Mapltem m) void −n/one− 53 Put (Msg& msg, Word I, Writinglem & S) void −n/one− 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word I, Writinglem & S) void −n/one− 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word I, Writinglem &			
nithread Threadld const -n/a- 41 NoAccess Word const -n/a- 45 NumProcessors (void* KernelInterface) Word -none- 8 RumProcessors (void* KernelInterface) Word -none- 8 Pager (Threadld) -none- 8 Pager (Threadld) Threadld EXCHANGERGISTERS 22 Pages (Threadld) Threadld (Pager (Pager) Word) -none- 37 ProcDes (ata type) -none- 37 ProcDesc (data type) -none- 9 Processor (Oword Word ProcessorNo, InternalFrequency, ExternalFrequency, Stage) word -none- 9 ProcessorNo () Word ProcessorNo, Word I, int u, Word& [u] ut, int t, {Mapltem Grantltem Stringtem -none- 17 Put (Msg& msg., Word I, CrlXferftem c) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg., Word I, Stringtem s) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg., Word I, Mapltem m) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg., Word I, Stringtem s) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg., Word I, Word w) void -none- 53 Revill (Msg& msg., Word I, Word w) void -none- 63	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	-n/a-	41
NoAccess Word const -n/0- 41 NumMemoryDescriptors (void* KernelInterface) Word -n/0-ne- 8 NumProcessors (void* KernelInterface) Word -n/0-ne- 8 PageRights (void* KernelInterface) Word -n/0-ne- 17 Pager (ThreadId of ThreadId Pager (ThreadId (1) ThreadId Pager (ThreadId (1) ThreadId Pages (Nord) -n/0-ne- 17 Pages (Exclass (Void* KernelInterface) Word -n/0-ne- 8 ProceDesc (void* KernelInterface, Word num) ProcDesc* -n/0-ne- 9 ProceSescr Control (Word ProcessorNo, InternalFrequency, ExternalFrequency, voltage) Word -n/0-ne- 9 Processor (No (1) Word ProcessorNo, InternalFrequency, ExternalFrequency, voltage) Word -n/0-ne- 9 Vul (Mage Mag, Word (1) Word ProcessorNo, InternalFrequency, ExternalFrequency, voltage) Word -n/0-ne- 9 Vul (Mage Mag, Word (1) Word Word (n) Word Word (n) Word Word (n) Wor	Niltag MsgTag const	-n/a-	52
NumMemory Descriptors (void* KernelInterface) Word -none- 8 NumProcessors (void* KernelInterface) Word -none- 8 Pager (I) ThreadId -none- 8 Pager (T) ThreadId EXCHANGERGISTERS 22 Pager (ThreadId) (ThreadId) EXCHANGERGISTERS 22 Pages (ThreadId) (ThreadId) -none- 37 Procebes (data type -none- 37 Procebes (data type -none- 9 Processor (Out'd KernelInterface, Word num) ProcDesc* -none- 9 Processor (Out'd KernelInterface, Word num) ProcDesc* -none- 9 Processor (Out'd KernelInterface, Word num) ProcDesc* -none- 9 Processor (Out'd KernelInterface) Word -none- 9 Voltage (Msg. msg. Word () Word ProcessorNo, InternalFrequency, ExternalFrequency, externa	nilthread ThreadId const	-n/a-	15
NumProcessors (void* KernelInterface) Word -none— 8 Pager () Threadld () Threadld -none— 17 Pager (Threadld () Threadld) EXCHANGERGISTERS 22 Pages (Threadld () Threadld) EXCHANGERGISTERS 22 Pages (Threadld () Bool -none— 37 Procebes (void* KernelInterface) Word num) ProcDesc* -none— 9 Processor Not (Word ProcessorNo, InternalFrequency, ExternalFrequency, voltage) Word -none— 9 Processor No () Word -none— 9 Processor No () Word -none— 10 Vul (Msg& msg, Word I, GrantItem g) void -none— 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word I, GrantItem g) void -none— 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word I, Stringltems s) void -none— 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word I, Word W) void -none— 53 Readable Word const -none— 53 Readable Word const -none— 63 ReadPrecision (void* KernelInterface) Word -none— 9 Receive (Threadld from) MsgTag IPC 69 ReplyWait (Threadld to, Time RevTimeout)		<i>−n/a−</i>	
Pager (I) ThreadId (I		-none-	
Pager () ThreadId -none- 17 Pager (ThreadId t) ThreadId EXCHANGEREGISTERS 22 Pages/ExeMask (void* KernelInterface) Word -none- 37 PreemptionPending () Bool -none- 37 ProcDesc (void* KernelInterface, Word num) ProcDesc* -none- 9 Processor Control (Word ProcessorNo, InternalFrequency, ExternalFrequency, Voitage) Word -none- 17 Processor Swing, Word I, int u, Word& {u} ut, int t, {Mapltem GrantItem Stringluen -none- -none- 15 ½ (terms) void -none- 53 Put (Msg& msg, Word t, GrantItem g) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word t, Stringltem s) void -none- 53 Put (Msg& msg, Word t, Stringltem s) void -none- 53 Put (Msg& msg, Word t, Word w) void -none- 53 Revision (Acceptor a) Fpage -none- 53 Revision (Word w) void -none- 53 Revision (Void* KernelInterface) Word -none- 63 Revision (Void* KernelInterface) Word -none- 63 Revision (Void* KernelInterface) Word -none- 9 <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>			
Page (ThreadId to ThreadId PageSizeMask (void* KernelInterface) Word EXCHANGEREGISTERS 22 PageSizeMask (void* KernelInterface) Word -none— 37 37 700000000000000000000000000000000			
PageSizeMask (void* KernelInterface) Word -none- 38 ProenDes (unide) () Bool -none- 38 ProcDesc (void* KernelInterface, Word num) ProcDesc* -none- 9 Processor Control (Word ProcessorNo, InternalFrequency, ExternalFrequency, voilage) Word -none- 95 Processor No () Word -none- 10 Put (Msg& msg, Word I, int u, Word& [u] ut, int I, {MapItem GrantItem StringItem -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word I, CtrlXferItem c) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word I, MapItem m) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word I, StringItem s) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word I, WapItem w) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word I, Word w) void -none- 54 Readable Word const -none- 63 Revill (Msg& msg, Word I, Word w) void -none- 63 Readable Word const -none- 63 Revill (Msg& msg, Word I, StringItem &) void -none- 63 Revill (Msg& msg, Word I, StringItem &) void -none- 63 Revill (Msg& msg, Word I, StringItem &) void -			
PreemptionPending () Bool -none- 37 ProcDesc data type -nole- 9 Procebesc (void* KernelInterface, Word num) ProcDesc* -none- 9 ProcessorControl (Word ProcessorNo, InternalFrequency, ExternalFrequency, Voltage) Word -none- 17 ProcessorNo () Word -none- 17 Put (Msg& msg, Word I, int u, Word& [u] ut, int I, {MapItem GrantItem StringItem one- 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word I, CtrlXferItem c) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word I, MapItem m) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word I, StringItem s) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word I, StringItem s) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word I, StringItem s) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word u, StringItem s) void -none- 53 Revilindow (Acceptor a) Fpage -none- 54 Revilindow (Acceptor a) Fpage -none- 63 ReadexecOnly Word const -none- 63 ReadexecOnly Word const -none- 69 Receive (Threadld from) MsgTag IPc 69 Reply Wa			
Procbesc (void* KernelInterface, Word num) ProcDesc* -n/a— 8 Processor Control (Word ProcessorNo, InternalFrequency, ExternalFrequency, voltage) Word -none— 75 Processor Control (Word ProcessorNo, InternalFrequency, ExternalFrequency, voltage) Word -none— 17 Put (Msg& msg, Word I, int u, Word& [u] ut, int t, {MapItem GrantItem StringItem } ProcessorNo () Word -none— 53 ½k Items) void -none— 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word I, CtrlXferItem c) void -none— 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word I, MapItem m) void -none— 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word I, StringItems s) void -none— 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word I, StringItems s) void -none— 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word I, StringItems s) void -none— 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word u, Word w) void -none— 53 Rewill (Msg& msg, Word u, Word w) void -none— 63 Revit (Msg& msg, Word u, StringItems s) void -none— 63 Revit (Msg& msg, Word u, Word w) void -none— 63 Revit (Msg& msg, Word u, Word w) void -none— 16 Readable Word const -n/a— 10			
Processor Control (Word ProcessorNo, InternalFrequency, ExternalFrequency, -none			
Processor/Ontrol (Word ProcessorNo, InternalFrequency, Voltage) Word -none- 75 ProcessorNo () (Word ProcessorNo () Word () (Word ProcessorNo () (Word ProcessorNo () Word () (Word ProcessorNo () (Word ProcessorNo () (Word ProcessorNo () Word ProcessorNo () (Word Max () (Word ProcessorNo () (Word Processor) () (Word Processor) () (Word Processor) (Word Processor) () (Word Processo	71		
ProcessorNo () Word -none- 17 Put (Msg& msg, Word I, int u, Word& [u] ut, int t, {MapItem, GrantItem, Stringlitem} } \) \) \) \) \) \) \) \) \) \) \) \) \)			
Put (Msg& msg, Word I, int I, Word& [u] ut, int I, {Mapltem GrantItem StringItem -none- 54 Nut (Msg& msg, Word I, CtrlXferItem c) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word I, GrantItem g) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word I, Mapltem m) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word I, StringItem s) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word I, StringItem s) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word I, StringItem S) void -none- 53 RevWindow (Acceptor a) Fpage -none- 53 RevWindow (Acceptor a) Fpage -none- 63 Readable Word const -n/a- 41 ReadPrecision (void* KernelInterface) Word -none- 9 Receive (ThreadId from) MsgTag IPC 69 Reply (ThreadId to) MsgTag IPC 69 Reply (ThreadId to) MsgTag IPC 69 ReplyWait (ThreadId for, ThreadId& from) MsgTag IPC 69 ReservedMemoryType Word const -n/a- 41 SameThreads (ThreadId I, r) Bool -none- 41 SameThreads (ThreadId I, r) Bool EXCHANGEREGISTERS 15 -none- 9 SCHEDULE 35 Schedule (ThreadId I, r) Bool EXCHANGEREGISTERS 15 -none- 9 SCHEDULE 35 Schedule (ThreadId I, r) Bool EXCHANGEREGISTERS 15 -none- 9 SCHEDULE 35 Schedule (ThreadId Id I, r) Bool EXCHANGEREGISTERS 15 -none- 9 SCHEDULE 35 Schedule (ThreadId Id I, r) Bool EXCHANGEREGISTERS 15 -none- 9 SCHEDULE 35 Schedule (ThreadId Id I, r) Bool EXCHANGEREGISTERS 15 -none- 9 SCHEDULE 35 Schedule (ThreadId Id I, r) Bool -none- 17 Set. ExceptionHandler (ThreadId NewHandler) void -none- 17 Set. ExceptionHandler (ThreadId NewHandler) void -none- 17 Set. ExceptionHandler (ThreadId NewHandler) void -none- 17 Set. ExceptionHandler (ThreadId NewHandler) word -none- 17 Set. Pager (ThreadId NewPager) void -none- 17 Set. Pager (ThreadId NewPager) void EXCHANGEREGISTERS 25 Set. Page (ThreadId NewPager) void EXCHANGEREGISTERS 25 Set. Pager (ThreadId NewPager) void EXCHANGEREGISTERS 25 Set. Pager (ThreadId dest, Word ProcessorNo) (Word maxDelay) W	voltage) Word		
Reterns Novid Put (Msg& msg, Word t, CtrlXferItem c) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word t, GrantItem g) void -none- 53 Put (Msg& msg, Word t, MapItem m) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word t, StringItem s) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word t, StringItem s) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word t, StringItem s) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word t, StringItem s) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word t, StringItem s) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word u, Word w) void -none- 53 RcvWindow (Acceptor a) Fpage -none- 63 Readable Word const -n/a- 40 ReadeXecOnly Word const -n/a- 40 ReadPrecision (void* KernelInterface) Word -none- 9 Receive (ThreadId from) MsgTag IPC 69 Receive (ThreadId from) MsgTag IPC 69 Reply Wait (ThreadId to, Time RevTimeout) MsgTag IPC 69 Reply Wait (ThreadId to, Time RevTimeout, ThreadId& from) MsgTag IPC 69 Reply Wait (ThreadId to, Time RevTimeout, ThreadId& from) MsgTag IPC 69 ReservedMemoryType Word const -none- 41 SameThreads (ThreadId t, P) Bool EXCHANGEREGISTENS 15 Schedule Precision (void* KernelInterface) Word -none- 41 SameThreads (ThreadId dest, Word TimeControl, ProcessorControl, prio, Preemption- Control, Word& old-TimeControl) Word -none- 73 Set LopFlag (Word n) void -none- 73 Set LopFlag (Word n) void -none- 73 Set ExceptionHandler (ThreadId NewHandler) void -none- 73 Set ExceptionHandler (ThreadId NewHandler) void -none- 53 Set LMsgTag (Msg& msg, MsgTag t) void -none- 53 Set LMsgTag (Msg& msg, WsgTag t) void -none- 53 Set LMsgTag (Msg& msg, MsgTag t) void -none- 52 Set LAsef (ThreadId to, Page f, Word attribute) Word MEMORYCONTROL 77 Set Pager (ThreadId NewPager) void EXCHANGEREGISTENS 25 Set Pages Attribute (Fypage f, Word attribute) Word MEMORYCONTROL 77 Set PreemptionDelay (ThreadId dest, Word processorNo) Word -none- 3	ProcessorNo () Word	-none-	17
Put (Msg& msg, Word t, Crt/KferItem c) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word t, GrantItem g) void -none- 53 Put (Msg& msg, Word t, MapItem m) void -none- 53 Put (Msg& msg, Word t, StringItem s) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word t, StringItem s) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word t, StringItem s) void -none- 53 RevWindow (Acceptor a) Fpage -none- 63 Readable Word const -n/a- 40 Readable Word const -n/a- 41 ReadeXecOnly Word const -n/a- 41 ReadeXecOin (Woid* KernelInterface) Word -none- 9 Receive (ThreadId from) MsgTag IPC 69 Receive (ThreadId from) MsgTag IPC 69 ReptyWait (ThreadId to) MsgTag IPC 69 ReplyWait (ThreadId to, ThreadId& from) MsgTag IPC 69 ReplyWait (ThreadId to, Time RevTimeout, ThreadId& from) MsgTag IPC 69 ReplyWait (ThreadId to, Time Surfameout, ThreadId& from) MsgTag IPC 69 ReplyWait (ThreadId from) void </td <td></td> <td>-none-</td> <td>53</td>		-none-	53
Put (Msg& msg, Word t, GrantItem g) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word t, MapItem m) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word t, StringItems s) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word t, StringItems s) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word t, Word w) void -none- 53 RevWindow (Acceptor a) Fpage -none- 63 Readble Word const -n/a- 40 ReadPrecision (void* KernelInterface) Word -n/a- 41 ReadPrecision (void* KernelInterface) Word -none- 69 Receive (Threadld from, MsgTag IPC 69 Repty (Threadld to, Time RevTimeout) MsgTag IPC 69 Repty Wait (Threadld to, Time RevTimeout, Threadld& from) MsgTag IPC 69 Repty Wait (Threadld to, Time RevTimeout, Threadld& from) MsgTag IPC 69 ReservedMemory Type Word const -none- 14 Same Threads (Threadld I, r) Bool EXCHANGERGISTER 15 Schedule/Precision (void* KernelInterface) Word -none- 9 Schedule/ Threadld to, Time SndTimeout) MsgTag IPC 69 Send. (Th			
Put (Msg& msg, Word t, Mapltem m) void -none- 53 Put (Msg& msg, Word t, Stringtems) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word t, Stringtems) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word t, Word w) void -none- 53 RevWindow (Acceptor a) Fpage -none- 63 Readable Word const -n/a- 40 ReadeXecOnly Word const -n/a- 40 ReadeXecOnly Word const -n/a- 41 ReadeVecision (void* KernelInterface) Word -none- 9 Receive (Threadld from) MsgTag IPC 69 Receive (Threadld from) MsgTag IPC 69 Reply (Threadld to, MsgTag IPC 69 Reply Wait (Threadld to, Threadld& from) MsgTag IPC 69 Reserved Memory Type Word const -n/a- 19 Reshts (Fpage f) Word ExcHANGEREGISTERS 15 Schedule (Threadld to, r) Bool ExcHANGEREGISTERS 15 Schedule (Threadld Medst, Word TimeControl, ProcessorControl, prio, Preemption- 2 2 2 2 2 2 2			
Put (Msg& msg, Word t, StringItems) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word t, StringItems) void -none- 54 Put (Msg& msg, Word u, Word w) void -none- 53 RevWindow (Acceptor a) Fpage -none- 63 Readable Word const -n/a- 40 ReadeXecOnly Word const -n/a- 41 ReadPrecision (void* KernelInterface) Word -none- 9 Receive (ThreadId from) MsgTag IPC 69 Receive (ThreadId to) MsgTag IPC 69 Reply (ThreadId to) MsgTag IPC 69 Reply Wait (ThreadId to, Time RevTimeout) MsgTag IPC 69 ReplyWait (ThreadId to, Time CavTimeout, ThreadId& from) MsgTag IPC 69 ReservedMemoryType Word const -n/a- 9 Rights (Fpage f) Word -none- 41 SameThreads (ThreadId 1, r) Bool EXCHANGEREGISTERS 15 Schedule (ThreadId dest, Word TimeControl, ProcessorControl, prio, Preemption- 2CE 2CHEDULE 35 Sch (ThreadId to, Time SndTimeout) MsgTag IPC 69 Send (Thread			
Put (Msg& msg, Word t, StringItem& s) void -none- 54 Put (Msgk msg, Word u, Word w) void -none- 53 RcvWindow (Acceptor a) Fpage -none- 63 Readable Word const -n/a- 40 ReadeXecOnly Word const -n/a- 41 ReadPrecision (void* KernelInterface) Word -none- 9 Receive (ThreadId from) MsgTag IPC 69 Reply (ThreadId from) Time RcvTimeout) MsgTag IPC 69 Reply (ThreadId to, MsgTag IPC 69 Reply Wait (ThreadId to, Time RcvTimeout, ThreadId& from) MsgTag IPC 69 ReplyWait (ThreadId to, Time RcvTimeout, ThreadId& from) MsgTag IPC 69 ReservedMemoryType Word const -none- 9 ReservedMemoryType Word const EXCHANGEREGISTER 15 Schedule (ThreadId to, Time RcvTimeOntrof) ProcessorControl, prio, Preemption EXCHANGEREGISTERS 15 Schedule (ThreadId to, MsgTag IPC 69 Send (ThreadId to, MsgTag IPC 69 Send (ThreadId to, Time SndTimeout) MsgTag IPC 69 Sen			
Put (Msg& msg, Word u, Word w) void -none- 53 RevWindow (Acceptor a) Fpage -none- 63 Readable Word const -n/a- 40 ReadeXecOnly Word const -n/a- 41 ReadeXecOnly Word const -none- 9 Receive (Threadld from) MsgTag IPC 69 Receive (Threadld from, Time RevTimeout) MsgTag IPC 69 Reply (Threadld to, MsgTag IPC 69 Reply (Threadld to, Time RevTimeout, Threadld& from) MsgTag IPC 69 Reply Wait (Threadld to, Time RevTimeout, Threadld& from) MsgTag IPC 69 Reply Wait (Threadld to, Time RevTimeout, Threadld& from) MsgTag IPC 69 ReservedMemory Type Word const -n/a- 9 Rights (Fpage f) Word -none- 41 Same Threads (Threadld lot, Time Rout) MsgTag Enchalperceision (void* Kernellnterface) Word -none- 9 Schedule (Threadld dest, Word TimeControl) ProcessorControl, prio, Preemption- 52 CHEDULE 35 Control, Word& old. TimeControl) Word IPC 69 Send (Threadld to, Time SndTimeout) MsgTag <			
RevWindow (Ácceptor a) Fpage -none- 63 Readable Word const -n/a- 40 ReadeXecOnly Word const -n/a- 41 ReadPrecision (void* KernelInterface) Word -none- 9 Receive (ThreadId from) MsgTag IPC 69 Repty (ThreadId to, Time RevTimeout) MsgTag IPC 69 Reply Wait (ThreadId to, Time RevTimeout, ThreadId& from) MsgTag IPC 69 Reply Wait (ThreadId to, Time RevTimeout, ThreadId& from) MsgTag IPC 69 Reply Wait (ThreadId to, Time RevTimeout, ThreadId& from) MsgTag IPC 69 Reply Wait (ThreadId to, Time RevTimeout, ThreadId& from) MsgTag IPC 69 Reply Wait (ThreadId to, Time RevTimeout, ThreadId& from) MsgTag IPC 69 ReservedMemory Type Word const -none- 41 Same ThreadS (ThreadId to, Time State			
Readable Word const ReadeXecOnly Word const ReadPrecision (void* KernelInterface) Word Receive (ThreadId from) MsgTag Receive (ThreadId from) MsgTag Reply (ThreadId to, Time RcvTimeout) MsgTag ReplyWait (ThreadId to, Time RcvTimeout, ThreadId& from) MsgTag Rights (Fpage f) Word RameThreads (ThreadId 1, r) Bool RescrevedMemoryType Word const Received (ThreadId dest, Word TimeControl, ProcessorControl, prio, Preemption- Control, Word& old.TimeControl, Word Schedule (ThreadId dest, Word TimeControl, ProcessorControl, prio, Preemption- Control, Word& old.TimeControl, Word Send (ThreadId to, Time SndTimeout) MsgTag IPC Send (ThreadId to, Time SndTimeout) MsgTag IPC Set.CopFlag (Word n) void -none- 17 Set.ExceptionHandler (ThreadId NewHandler) void -none- 17 Set.ExceptionHandler (ThreadId new) void -none- 53 Set.MsgTag (MsgRmsg, Word label) void -none- 53 Set.MsgTag (MsgRmsg, MsgTag t) void -none- 53 Set.MsgTag (MsgRmsg, MsgTag t) void -none- 53 Set.MsgTag (MsgRmsg, MsgTag t) void -none- 53 Set.Pager (ThreadId NewPager) void -none- 54 Set.Pager (ThreadId NewPager) void -none- 55 Set.PagesAttribute (Fpage f, Word attribute) Word -none- 56 Set.PagesAttributes (Word n, Fpage& [n] fpages, Word& [4] attributes) Word -none- 56 Set.PreemptionDelay (ThreadId dest, Word ProcessorNo) Word -none- 56 Set.ProcessorNo (ThreadId dest, Word ProcessorNo) Word -none- 57 Set.ProcessorNo (ThreadId dest, Word ProcessorNo) Word			
ReadeXecOnly Word const-n/a-41ReadPrecision (void* KernelInterface) Word-none-9Receive (ThreadId from) MsgTagIPC69Receive (ThreadId from, Time RcvTimeout) MsgTagIPC69Reply (ThreadId to) MsgTagIPC69Reply Wait (ThreadId to, Time RcvTimeout, ThreadId& from) MsgTagIPC69ReplyWait (ThreadId to, Time RcvTimeout, ThreadId& from) MsgTagIPC69ReplyWait (ThreadId to, Time RcvTimeout, ThreadId& from) MsgTagIPC69ReservedMemoryType Word const-none-41SameThreads (ThreadId 1, r) BoolEXCHANGEREGISTERS15Schedule Precision (void* KernelInterface) Word-none-9Schedule (ThreadId dest, Word TimeControl, ProcessorControl, prio, PreemptionSCHEDULE35Control, Word& old-TimeControl) WordSCHEDULE69Send (ThreadId to, Time SndTimeout) MsgTagIPC69Send (ThreadId to, Time SndTimeout) MsgTagIPC69Set.CopFlag (Word n) void-none-17Set.ExceptionHandler (ThreadId NewHandler) void-none-17Set.ExceptionHandler (ThreadId NewHandler) void-none-53Set.MsgTag (Msg& msg, MsgTag t) void-none-53Set.MsgTag (MsgRag t) void-none-53Set.Pager (ThreadId NewPager) voidMEMORYCONTROL77Set.Pager (ThreadId NewPager) voidEXCHANGEREGISTERS22Set.Pager (ThreadId dest, Word attribute) WordMEMORYCONTROL77Set.Pager (ThreadId dest, Word Prioo Word<	, 1		
ReadPrecision (void* KernelInterface) Word-none-9Receive (ThreadId from) MsgTagIPC69Recpive (ThreadId from, Time RcvTimeout) MsgTagIPC69Reply (ThreadId to) MsgTagIPC69ReplyWait (ThreadId to, ThreadId& from) MsgTagIPC69ReplyWait (ThreadId to, Time RcvTimeout, ThreadId& from) MsgTagIPC69ReplyWait (ThreadId to, Time RcvTimeout, ThreadId& from) MsgTagIPC69ReservedMemoryType Word const-none-41SameThreads (ThreadId 1, r) BoolEXCHANGEREGISTERS15Schedule Precision (void* KernelInterface) WordEXCHANGEREGISTERS15Schedule (ThreadId dest, Word TimeControl, ProcessorControl, prio, Preemption-SCHEDULE35Control, Word& old-TimeControl) WordIPC69Send (ThreadId to, Time SndTimeout) MsgTagIPC69Set CopFlag (Word n) void-none-17Set.CopFlag (Word n) void-none-17Set.ExceptionHandler (ThreadId NewHandler) void-none-17Set.ExceptionHandler (ThreadId new) void-none-17Set.AsgTag (Msg& msg, MsgTag t) void-none-53Set.MsgTag (Msg& msg, MsgTag t) void-none-53Set.MsgTag (Msg& msg, MsgTag t) void-none-17Set.Pager (ThreadId NewPager) void-none-17Set.Pager (ThreadId NewPager) void-none-17Set.Pager (ThreadId NewPager) void-none-35Set.PreemptionDelay (ThreadId dest, Word sensitivePrio, Word maxDelay) Word-none-<		-n/a-	41
Receive (ThreadId from, Time RcvTimeout) MsgTagIPC69Reply (ThreadId to) MsgTagIPC69ReplyWait (ThreadId to, ThreadId& from) MsgTagIPC69ReplyWait (ThreadId to, Time RcvTimeout, ThreadId& from) MsgTagIPC69ReservedMemoryType Word const-n/a-9Rights (Fpage f) Word-none-41SameThreads (ThreadId 1, r) BoolEXCHANGEREGISTERS15Schedule (ThreadId dest, Word TimeControl, ProcessorControl, prio, Preemption-SCHEDULE35Control, Word& old TimeControl) WordSCHEDULE35Send (ThreadId to, Time SndTimeout) MsgTagIPC69Set. CopFlag (Word n) void-none-17Set. CopFlag (Word n) void-none-17Set. ExceptionHandler (ThreadId NewHandler) void-none-17Set. ExceptionHandler (ThreadId NewHandler) void-none-53Set. MsgTag (Msg Msg, Word label) void-none-53Set. MsgTag (Msg Msg, MsgTag t) void-none-53Set. MsgTag (MsgTag t) void-none-52Set. Pages (ThreadId NewPager) voidEXCHANGEREGISTERS22Set. Pager (ThreadId NewPager) voidEXCHANGEREGISTERS22Set. Pages (ThreadId t, p) voidEXCHANGEREGISTERS22Set. Pages (ThreadId dest, Word sensitive Prio, Word maxDelay) Word-none-35Set. Preemption Delay (ThreadId dest, Word sensitive Prio, Word maxDelay) Word-none-35Set. Processor No (ThreadId dest, Word prio) Word-none-35Set. Processor No (Thre	·		9
Reply (Threadld to) MsgTagIPC69ReplyWait (Threadld to, Threadld& from) MsgTagIPC69ReplyWait (Threadld to, Time RcvTimeout, Threadld& from) MsgTagIPC69ReservedMemoryType Word const-n/a-9Rights (Fpage f) Word-none-41SameThreads (Threadld l, r) BoolEXCHANGEREGISTERS15SchedulePrecision (void* KernelInterface) Word-none-9Schedule (Threadld dest, Word TimeControl, ProcessorControl, prio, Preemption- Control, Word& old.TimeControl) WordSCHEDULE35Send (Threadld to) MsgTagIPC69Send (Threadld to, Time SndTimeout) MsgTagIPC69Set.CopFlag (Word n) void-none-17Set.ExceptionHandler (Threadld NewHandler) void-none-73Set.ExceptionHandler (Threadld new) void-none-72Set.Label (Msg& msg, Word label) void-none-53Set.MsgTag (MsgTag t) void-none-53Set.MsgTag (MsgTag t) void-none-53Set.Pager (Threadld NewPager) voidMEMORYCONTROL77Set.Pager (Threadld NewPager) voidEXCHANGEREGISTERS22Set.Pager (Threadld NewPager) (Threadld dest, Word sensitivePrio, Word maxDelay) WordEXCHANGEREGISTERS22Set.ProcessorNo (Threadld dest, Word ProcessorNo) Word-none-35Set.ProcessorNo (Threadld dest, Word ProcessorNo) Word-none-35		IPC	69
ReplyWait (ThreadId to, ThreadId& from) MsgTagIPC69ReplyWait (ThreadId to, Time RcvTimeout, ThreadId& from) MsgTagIPC69ReservedMemoryType Word constnda			
ReplyWait (ThreadId to, Time RcvTimeout, ThreadId& from) MsgTagIPC69ReservedMemoryType Word const-n/a-9Rights (Fpage f) Word-none-41SameThreads (ThreadId 1, r) BoolEXCHANGEREGISTERS15Schedule Precision (void* KernelInterface) Word-none-9Schedule (ThreadId dest, Word TimeControl, ProcessorControl, prio, Preemption-SCHEDULE35Control, Word& old_TimeControl) WordIPC69Send (ThreadId to) MsgTagIPC69Set (CopFlag (Word n) void-none-17Set_CopFlag (Word n) void-none-73Set_ExceptionHandler (ThreadId NewHandler) void-none-17Set_ExceptionHandler (ThreadId new) void-none-17Set_MsgTag (Msg& msg, MsgTag t) void-none-53Set_MsgTag (Msg& msg, MsgTag t) void-none-53Set_PageAttribute (Fpage f, Word attribute) WordMEMORYCONTROL77Set_Pager (ThreadId NewPager) void-none-17Set_Pager (ThreadId NewPager) voidEXCHANGEREGISTERS22Set_PagesAttributes (Word n, Fpage& [n] fpages, Word& [4] attributes) WordEXCHANGEREGISTERS22Set_PagesAttribute (ThreadId dest, Word sensitivePrio, Word maxDelay) Word-none-35Set_ProcessorNo (ThreadId dest, Word ProcessorNo) Word-none-35Set_ProcessorNo (ThreadId dest, Word ProcessorNo) Word-none-35			
ReservedMemoryType Word const-n/a-9Rights (Fpage f) Word-none-41SameThreads (ThreadId I, r) BoolEXCHANGEREGISTERS15SchedulePrecision (void* KernelInterface) Word-none-9Schedule (ThreadId dest, Word TimeControl, ProcessorControl, prio, Preemption- Control, Word& old.TimeControl) WordSCHEDULE35Send (ThreadId to) MsgTagIPC69Send (ThreadId to, Time SndTimeout) MsgTagIPC69Set.CopFlag (Word n) void-none-17Set.ExceptionHandler (ThreadId NewHandler) void-none-17Set.ExceptionHandler (ThreadId new) void-none-17Set.Label (Msg& msg, Word label) void-none-53Set.MsgTag (Msg&msg, MsgTag t) void-none-53Set.MsgTag (MsgTag t) void-none-52Set.PageAttribute (Fpage f, Word attribute) WordMEMORYCONTROL77Set.Pager (ThreadId NewPager) void-none-17Set.Pager (ThreadId NewPager) voidEXCHANGEREGISTERS22Set.Pages Attributes (Word n, Fpage& [n] fpages, Word& [4] attributes) WordMEMORYCONTROL77Set.PagesAttributes (Word n, Fpage& [n] fpages, Word& [4] attributes) WordMEMORYCONTROL77Set.PreemptionDelay (ThreadId dest, Word sensitivePrio, Word maxDelay) Word-none-35Set.Priority (ThreadId dest, Word ProcessorNo) Word-none-35Set.ProcessorNo (ThreadId dest, Word ProcessorNo) Word-none-35			
Rights (Fpage f) Word-none-41SameThreads (ThreadId I, r) BoolEXCHANGEREGISTERS15SchedulePrecision (void* KernelInterface) Word-none-9Schedule (ThreadId dest, Word TimeControl, ProcessorControl, prio, Preemption- Control, Word& old_TimeControl) WordSCHEDULE35Send (ThreadId to) MsgTagIPC69Send (ThreadId to, Time SndTimeout) MsgTagIPC69Set_CopFlag (Word n) void-none-17Set_ExceptionHandler (ThreadId NewHandler) void-none-17Set_ExceptionHandler (ThreadId new) void-none-17Set_MsgTag (Msg& msg, Word label) void-none-53Set_MsgTag (Msg msg, MsgTag t) void-none-53Set_MsgTag (MsgTag t) void-none-53Set_PageAttribute (Fpage f, Word attribute) WordMEMORYCONTROL77Set_Pager (ThreadId NewPager) voidEXCHANGEREGISTERS22Set_Pager (ThreadId t, p) voidEXCHANGEREGISTERS22Set_PagesAttributes (Word n, Fpage& [n] fpages, Word& [4] attributes) WordMEMORYCONTROL77Set_PagesAttributes (Word n, Fpage& [n] fpages, Word& [4] attributes) Word-none-35Set_ProcessorNo (ThreadId dest, Word prio) Word-none-35Set_ProcessorNo (ThreadId dest, Word ProcessorNo) Word-none-35			
Same Threads (ThreadId l, r) BoolEXCHANGEREGISTERS15Schedule Precision (void* KernelInterface) Word-none-9Schedule (ThreadId dest, Word TimeControl, ProcessorControl, prio, Preemption-Control, Word& old.TimeControl) WordSCHEDULE35Send (ThreadId to) MsgTagIPC69Send (ThreadId to, Time SndTimeout) MsgTagIPC69Set.CopFlag (Word n) void-none-17Set.DepFlag (Word n) void-none-17Set.ExceptionHandler (ThreadId NewHandler) void-none-17Set.ExceptionHandler (ThreadId new) void-none-53Set.MsgTag (Msg& msg, Word label) void-none-53Set.MsgTag (Msg& msg, MsgTag t) void-none-53Set.PageAttribute (Fpage f, Word attribute) WordMEMORYCONTROL77Set.Pager (ThreadId t, p) voidEXCHANGEREGISTERS22Set.Pages (ThreadId t, p) voidEXCHANGEREGISTERS22Set.PagesAttributes (Word n, Fpage& [n] fpages, Word& [4] attributes) WordMEMORYCONTROL77Set.PreemptionDelay (ThreadId dest, Word sensitivePrio, Word maxDelay) Word-none-35Set.Priority (ThreadId dest, Word prio) Word-none-35Set.ProcessorNo (ThreadId dest, Word ProcessorNo) Word-none-35			
Schedule Precision (void* KernelInterface) Word-none-9Schedule (ThreadId dest, Word TimeControl, ProcessorControl, prio, Preemption-Control, Word& old_TimeControl) WordSCHEDULE35Send (ThreadId to) MsgTagIPC69Send (ThreadId to, Time SndTimeout) MsgTagIPC69Set_CopFlag (Word n) void-none-17Set_CopFlag (Word n) void-none-73Set_ExceptionHandler (ThreadId NewHandler) void-none-17Set_ExceptionHandler (ThreadId new) void-none-72Set_Label (Msg& msg, Word label) void-none-53Set_MsgTag (Msg& msg, MsgTag t) void-none-53Set_MsgTag (MsgTag t) void-none-52Set_PageAttribute (Fpage f, Word attribute) WordMEMORYCONTROL77Set_Pager (ThreadId NewPager) void-none-17Set_Pager (ThreadId t, p) voidEXCHANGEREGISTERS22Set_PagesAttributes (Word n, Fpage& [n] fpages, Word& [4] attributes) WordMEMORYCONTROL77Set_PreemptionDelay (ThreadId dest, Word sensitivePrio, Word maxDelay) Word-none-35Set_ProcessorNo (ThreadId dest, Word ProcessorNo) Word-none-35			
Schedule (ThreadId dest, Word TimeControl, ProcessorControl, prio, Preemption-Control, Word& old_TimeControl) WordSCHEDULE35Send (ThreadId to) MsgTagIPC69Send (ThreadId to, Time SndTimeout) MsgTagIPC69Set_CopFlag (Word n) void-none-17Set_CopFlag (Word n) void-none-73Set_ExceptionHandler (ThreadId NewHandler) void-none-17Set_ExceptionHandler (ThreadId new) void-none-72Set_Label (Msg& msg, Word label) void-none-53Set_MsgTag (Msg& msg, MsgTag t) void-none-53Set_PageAttribute (Fpage f, Word attribute) WordMEMORYCONTROL77Set_Pager (ThreadId NewPager) void-none-17Set_Pager (ThreadId to, p) voidEXCHANGEREGISTERS22Set_PagesAttributes (Word n, Fpage& [n] fpages, Word& [4] attributes) WordMEMORYCONTROL77Set_PreemptionDelay (ThreadId dest, Word sensitivePrio, Word maxDelay) Word-none-35Set_Priority (ThreadId dest, Word prio) Word-none-35Set_ProcessorNo (ThreadId dest, Word ProcessorNo) Word-none-35			
Control, Word& old_TimeControl) Word Send (ThreadId to) MsgTag IPC 69 Send (ThreadId to, Time SndTimeout) MsgTag IPC 69 Set_CopFlag (Word n) void -none- 73 Set_Exceptian (Word n) void -none- 8et_Exception Handler (ThreadId NewHandler) void -none- 72 Set_Exception Handler (ThreadId new) void -none- 8et_Label (Msg& msg, Word label) void -none- 53 Set_MsgTag (Msg& msg, MsgTag t) void -none- 53 Set_MsgTag (MsgTag t) void -none- 52 Set_PageAttribute (Fpage f, Word attribute) Word MEMORYCONTROL 77 Set_Pager (ThreadId NewPager) void -none- 52 Set_PagesAttributes (Word n, Fpage& [n] fpages, Word& [4] attributes) Word Set_Preemption Delay (ThreadId dest, Word sensitive Prio, Word max Delay) Word Set_Priority (ThreadId dest, Word prio) Word -none- 35 Set_Processor No (ThreadId dest, Word Processor No) Word -none- 35 Set_Processor No (ThreadId dest, Word Processor No) Word			
Send (ThreadId to) MsgTagIPC69Send (ThreadId to, Time SndTimeout) MsgTagIPC69Set_CopFlag (Word n) void-none-17Set_CopFlag (Word n) void-none-73Set_ExceptionHandler (ThreadId NewHandler) void-none-17Set_ExceptionHandler (ThreadId new) void-none-72Set_Label (Msg& msg, Word label) void-none-53Set_MsgTag (Msg& msg, MsgTag t) void-none-53Set_MsgTag (MsgTag t) void-none-52Set_PageAttribute (Fpage f, Word attribute) WordMEMORYCONTROL77Set_Pager (ThreadId NewPager) void-none-17Set_Pager (ThreadId t, p) voidEXCHANGEREGISTERS22Set_PagesAttributes (Word n, Fpage& [n] fpages, Word& [4] attributes) WordMEMORYCONTROL77Set_PreemptionDelay (ThreadId dest, Word sensitivePrio, Word maxDelay) Word-none-35Set_Priority (ThreadId dest, Word prio) Word-none-35Set_ProcessorNo (ThreadId dest, Word ProcessorNo) Word-none-35			
Send (ThreadId to, Time SndTimeout) MsgTagIPC69Set_CopFlag (Word n) void-none-17Set_CopFlag (Word n) void-none-73Set_ExceptionHandler (ThreadId NewHandler) void-none-17Set_ExceptionHandler (ThreadId new) void-none-72Set_Label (Msg& msg, Word label) void-none-53Set_MsgTag (Msg& msg, MsgTag t) void-none-53Set_MsgTag (MsgTag t) void-none-52Set_PageAttribute (Fpage f, Word attribute) WordMEMORYCONTROL77Set_Pager (ThreadId NewPager) void-none-17Set_Pager (ThreadId t, p) voidEXCHANGEREGISTERS22Set_PagesAttributes (Word n, Fpage& [n] fpages, Word& [4] attributes) WordMEMORYCONTROL77Set_PreemptionDelay (ThreadId dest, Word sensitivePrio, Word maxDelay) Word-none-35Set_Priority (ThreadId dest, Word prio) Word-none-35Set_ProcessorNo (ThreadId dest, Word ProcessorNo) Word-none-35		IPC	69
Set_CopFlag (Word n) void-none-73Set_ExceptionHandler (ThreadId NewHandler) void-none-17Set_ExceptionHandler (ThreadId new) void-none-72Set_Label (Msg& msg, Word label) void-none-53Set_MsgTag (Msg& msg, MsgTag t) void-none-53Set_MsgTag (MsgTag t) void-none-52Set_PageAttribute (Fpage f, Word attribute) WordMEMORYCONTROL77Set_Pager (ThreadId NewPager) void-none-17Set_Pager (ThreadId t, p) voidEXCHANGEREGISTERS22Set_PagesAttributes (Word n, Fpage& [n] fpages, Word& [4] attributes) WordMEMORYCONTROL77Set_PreemptionDelay (ThreadId dest, Word sensitivePrio, Word maxDelay) Word-none-35Set_Priority (ThreadId dest, Word ProcessorNo) Word-none-35Set_ProcessorNo (ThreadId dest, Word ProcessorNo) Word-none-35		IPC	69
Set_ExceptionHandler (ThreadId NewHandler) void-none-17Set_ExceptionHandler (ThreadId new) void-none-72Set_Label (Msg& msg, Word label) void-none-53Set_MsgTag (Msg& msg, MsgTag t) void-none-53Set_MsgTag (MsgTag t) void-none-52Set_PageAttribute (Fpage f, Word attribute) WordMEMORYCONTROL77Set_Pager (ThreadId NewPager) void-none-17Set_Pager (ThreadId t, p) voidEXCHANGEREGISTERS22Set_PagesAttributes (Word n, Fpage& [n] fpages, Word& [4] attributes) WordMEMORYCONTROL77Set_PreemptionDelay (ThreadId dest, Word sensitivePrio, Word maxDelay) Word-none-35Set_Priority (ThreadId dest, Word ProcessorNo) Word-none-35Set_ProcessorNo (ThreadId dest, Word ProcessorNo) Word-none-35	Set_CopFlag (Word n) void	-none-	17
Set_ExceptionHandler (ThreadId new) void-none-72Set_Label (Msg& msg, Word label) void-none-53Set_MsgTag (Msg& msg, MsgTag t) void-none-53Set_MsgTag (MsgTag t) void-none-52Set_PageAttribute (Fpage f, Word attribute) WordMEMORYCONTROL77Set_Pager (ThreadId NewPager) void-none-17Set_Pager (ThreadId t, p) voidEXCHANGEREGISTERS22Set_PagesAttributes (Word n, Fpage& [n] fpages, Word& [4] attributes) WordMEMORYCONTROL77Set_PreemptionDelay (ThreadId dest, Word sensitivePrio, Word maxDelay) Word-none-35Set_ProcessorNo (ThreadId dest, Word ProcessorNo) Word-none-35		-none-	73
Set_Label (Msg& msg, Word label) void-none-53Set_MsgTag (Msg& msg, MsgTag t) void-none-53Set_MsgTag (MsgTag t) void-none-52Set_PageAttribute (Fpage f, Word attribute) WordMEMORYCONTROL77Set_Pager (ThreadId NewPager) void-none-17Set_Pager (ThreadId t, p) voidEXCHANGEREGISTERS22Set_PagesAttributes (Word n, Fpage& [n] fpages, Word& [4] attributes) WordMEMORYCONTROL77Set_PreemptionDelay (ThreadId dest, Word sensitivePrio, Word maxDelay) Word-none-35Set_ProcessorNo (ThreadId dest, Word ProcessorNo) Word-none-35		-none-	
Set_MsgTag (Msg& msg, MsgTag t) void-none-53Set_MsgTag (MsgTag t) void-none-52Set_PageAttribute (Fpage f, Word attribute) WordMEMORYCONTROL77Set_Pager (ThreadId NewPager) void-none-17Set_Pager (ThreadId t, p) voidEXCHANGEREGISTERS22Set_PagesAttributes (Word n, Fpage& [n] fpages, Word& [4] attributes) WordMEMORYCONTROL77Set_PreemptionDelay (ThreadId dest, Word sensitivePrio, Word maxDelay) Word-none-35Set_ProcessorNo (ThreadId dest, Word ProcessorNo) Word-none-35			
Set_MsgTag (MsgTag t) void-none-52Set_PageAttribute (Fpage f, Word attribute) WordMEMORYCONTROL77Set_Pager (ThreadId NewPager) void-none-17Set_Pager (ThreadId t, p) voidEXCHANGEREGISTERS22Set_PagesAttributes (Word n, Fpage& [n] fpages, Word& [4] attributes) WordMEMORYCONTROL77Set_PreemptionDelay (ThreadId dest, Word sensitivePrio, Word maxDelay) Word-none-35Set_ProcessorNo (ThreadId dest, Word ProcessorNo) Word-none-35			
Set_PageAttribute (Fpage f, Word attribute) WordMEMORYCONTROL77Set_Pager (ThreadId NewPager) void-none-17Set_Pager (ThreadId t, p) voidEXCHANGEREGISTERS22Set_PagesAttributes (Word n, Fpage& [n] fpages, Word& [4] attributes) WordMEMORYCONTROL77Set_PreemptionDelay (ThreadId dest, Word sensitivePrio, Word maxDelay) Word-none-35Set_ProcessorNo (ThreadId dest, Word ProcessorNo) Word-none-35			
Set_Pager (ThreadId NewPager) void-none-17Set_Pager (ThreadId t, p) voidEXCHANGEREGISTERS22Set_PagesAttributes (Word n, Fpage& [n] fpages, Word& [4] attributes) WordMEMORYCONTROL77Set_PreemptionDelay (ThreadId dest, Word sensitivePrio, Word maxDelay) Word-none-35Set_ProcessorNo (ThreadId dest, Word ProcessorNo) Word-none-35			
Set_Pager (ThreadId t, p) voidEXCHANGEREGISTERS22Set_PagesAttributes (Word n, Fpage& [n] fpages, Word& [4] attributes) WordMEMORYCONTROL77Set_PreemptionDelay (ThreadId dest, Word sensitivePrio, Word maxDelay) Word-none-35Set_ProcessorNo (ThreadId dest, Word ProcessorNo) Word-none-35			
Set_PagesAttributes (Word n , Fpage& [n] fpages, Word& [4] attributes) WordMEMORYCONTROL77Set_PreemptionDelay (ThreadId dest, Word sensitivePrio, Word maxDelay) Word $-none-$ 35Set_ProcessorNo (ThreadId dest, Word ProcessorNo) Word $-none-$ 35Set_ProcessorNo (ThreadId dest, Word ProcessorNo) Word $-none-$ 35			
Set_PreemptionDelay (ThreadId dest, Word sensitivePrio, Word maxDelay) Word-none-35Set_Priority (ThreadId dest, Word prio) Word-none-35Set_ProcessorNo (ThreadId dest, Word ProcessorNo) Word-none-35			
Set_Priority (ThreadId dest, Word prio) Word-none-35Set_ProcessorNo (ThreadId dest, Word ProcessorNo) Word-none-35			
Set_ProcessorNo (ThreadId dest, Word ProcessorNo) Word —none— 35			
Set_Propagation (MsgTag& t) void —none— 70	Set_ProcessorNo (ThreadId dest, Word ProcessorNo) Word		
	Set_Propagation (MsgTag& t) void	-none-	70

	used system call	page
Set_Rights (Fpage& f, Word AccessRights) void	–none–	41
Set_Timeslice (ThreadId dest, Time ts, Time tq) Word	-none-	35
Set_UserDefinedHandle (ThreadId t, Word handle) void	EXCHANGEREGISTERS	21
Set_UserDefinedHandle (Word NewValue) void	-none-	17
Set_VirtualSender (ThreadId t) void	-none-	17
Set_VirtualSender (ThreadId t) void	-none-	70
Set_XferTimeouts (Word NewValue) void	-none-	17
SharedMemoryType Word const	-n/a-	9
SimpleExec_BssPstart (BootRec* b) Word SimpleExec_BssSize (BootRec* b) Word	-none-	171 172
SimpleExec_BssVstart (BootRec* b) Word	-none-	172
SimpleExec_Cmdline (BootRec* b) char*	–none– –none–	172
SimpleExec_DataPstart (BootRec* b) Word	-none-	171
SimpleExec_DataSize (BootRec* b) Word	-none-	171
SimpleExec_DataVstart (BootRec* b) Word	-none-	171
SimpleExec_Flags (BootRec* b) Word	-none-	172
SimpleExec_InitialIP (BootRec* b) Word	-none-	172
SimpleExec_Label (BootRec* b) Word	-none-	172
SimpleExec_Set_Flags (BootRec* b, Word w) void	-none-	172
SimpleExec_Set_Label (BootRec* b, Word w) void	-none-	172
SimpleExec_TextPstart (BootRec* b) Word	-none-	171
SimpleExec_TextSize (BootRec* b) Word	-none-	171
SimpleExec_TextVstart (BootRec* b) Word	-none-	171
Size (Fpage f) Word SizeLog2 (Fpage f) Word	-none-	41 41
Sleep (Time t) void	<i>–none–</i> IPC	69
SmallSpace (Word location, size) Word	-none-	105
SndBase (GrantItem g) Word	-none-	57
SndBase (MapItem m) Word	-none-	56
SndFpage (GrantItem g) Fpage	-none-	57
SndFpage (MapItem m) Fpage	-none-	56
SpaceControl (ThreadId SpaceSpecifier, Word control, Fpage KernelInter-	SPACECONTROL	47
facePageArea, UtcbArea, ThreadId Redirector, Word& old_Control) Word		
SpeculativeMemory Word const	<i>−n/a−</i>	144
Start (ThreadId t) void	EXCHANGEREGISTERS	22
Start (ThreadId t, Word sp, ip, flags) void	EXCHANGEREGISTERS	22
Start (ThreadId t, Word sp, ip) void	EXCHANGEREGISTERS	22
Stop (ThreadId t) ThreadState Stop (ThreadId t, Word& sp. in, flags) ThreadState	EXCHANGEREGISTERS EXCHANGEREGISTERS	22 22
Stop (ThreadId t, Word& sp, ip, flags) ThreadState StoreBR (int i, Word& w) void	-none-	11
StoreBR (int i, Word& w) void	-none-	63
StoreBRs (int i , k , Word& $[k]$) void	-none-	11
StoreBRs (int i, k , Word& $[k]$) void	-none-	63
StoreMR (int i , Word& w) void	-none-	11
StoreMR (int i , Word& w) void	-none-	54
StoreMRs (int i, k , Word& $[k]$ w) void	-none-	11
StoreMRs (int i, k , Word& $[k]$ w) void	-none-	54
Store (MsgTag t, Msg& msg) void	-none-	53
StringItem data type	<i>−n/a−</i>	60
StringItem (int size, void* address) StringItem	-none-	60
StringItems (Acceptor a) Bool	-none-	63
StringItemsAcceptor Acceptor const	-n/a-	62
+ (StringItem s, CacheAllocationHint h) StringItem StringItem (StringItem& s) Bool	-none-	61 60
Substrings (StringItem& s) Bool Substrings (StringItem& s) Word	–none– –none–	60
Substring (StringItem& s, Word n) void*	-none-	60
SystemClock () Clock	SystemClock	29
ThreadControl (ThreadId dest, SpaceSpecifier, Scheduler, Pager, void* UtcbLoca-	THREADCONTROL	25
tion) Word		
ThreadIdBits (void* KernelInterface) Word	-none-	8
ThreadId data type	-n/a-	15
== (ThreadId l, r) Bool	-none-	15
ThreadIdSystemBase (void* KernelInterface) Word	-none-	8

	used system call	page
ThreadIdUserBase (void* KernelInterface) Word	-none-	9
ThreadNo (ThreadId t) Word	-none-	15
ThreadState data type	-n/a-	22
ThreadSwitch (ThreadId dest) void	THREADSWITCH	32
ThreadWasHalted (ThreadState s) Bool	-none-	22
ThreadWasIpcing (ThreadState s) Bool	-none-	22
ThreadWasReceiving (ThreadState s) Bool	-none-	22
ThreadWasSending (ThreadState s) Bool	-none-	22
Time data type	-n/a-	30
<= (Time l, r) Bool < (Time l, r) Bool	–none– –none–	31 31
== (Time l, r) Bool	-none-	31
\Rightarrow (Time l, r) Bool	-none-	31
> (Time l, r) Bool	-none-	31
- (Time l, r) Time	-none-	31
+ (Time l, r) Time	-none-	31
- (Time I, Word r) Time	-none-	31
+ (Time I, Word r) Time	-none-	31
Timeouts (Time SndTimeout, RcvTimeout) Word TimePeriod (Word64 microseconds) Time	-none-	70
TimePoint (Clock at) Time	–none– –none–	30 31
Timeslice (ThreadId dest, Time & ts, Time & tq) Word	-none-	35
Type (BootRec* BootRec) Word	-none-	169
TypedWords (Msg Tag t) Word	-none-	52
Type (MemoryDesc& m) Word	-none-	9
UncacheableMemory Word const	-n/a-	107
UncacheableMemory Word const	-n/a-	132
UndefinedMemoryType Word const	-n/a-	9
Unmap (Fpage f) Fpage	UNMAP	43
Unmap (Word control) void Unmap (Word n, Fpage& [n] fpages) void	Unmap Unmap	43 43
UntypedWordsAcceptor Acceptor const	-n/a−	62
UntypedWords (Msg Tag t) Word	-none-	52
UseDefaultCacheLineAllocation CacheAllocationHint const	-n/a-	106
UseDefaultCacheLineAllocation CacheAllocationHint const	-n/a-	131
UseDefaultCacheLineAllocation CacheAllocationHint const	-n/a-	60
UserDefinedHandle (ThreadId t) Word	ExchangeRegisters	21
UserDefinedHandle () Word	-none-	17
UtchAlignmentLog2 (void* KernelInterface) Word	-none-	9 9
UtcbAreaSizeLog2 (void* KernelInterface) Word UtcbSize (void* KernelInterface) Word	–none– –none–	9
Version (ThreadId t) Word	-none-	15
Wait (ThreadId& from) MsgTag	IPC	69
Wait (Time RcvTimeout, ThreadId& from) MsgTag	IPC	69
WaseXecuted (Fpage f) Bool	-none-	44
WasReferenced (Fpage f) Bool	-none-	44
WasWritten (Fpage f) Bool	-none-	44
Writable Word const	-n/a-	40
WriteBackMemory Word const WriteBackMemory Word const	−n/a− −n/a−	107 132
WriteBackMemory Word const	-n/a-	144
WriteCombiningMemory Word const	-n/a-	107
WriteCombiningMemory Word const	-n/a-	132
WriteProtectedMemory Word const	<i>−n/a−</i>	107
WriteProtectedMemory Word const	-n/a-	132
WriteThroughMemory Word const	-n/a-	107
WriteThroughMemory Word const	-n/a-	132
WriteThroughMemory Word const	-n/a-	144
XferTimeouts () Word	-none-	17 32
Yield () void ZeroTime Time const	ThreadSwitch -n/a-	30
ZELOTHIE THIE COURT	-π/α-	30

Index

!=, 15, 28, 31	powerpc, 139
+, 28, 31, 41, 52, 61, 62	ppc64, 157
+=, 31, 41, 52, 60–62	
-, 28, 31, 41, 63	cacheability, 59, 106, 107, 131, 132, 144, 163
– (ignored), vii	CacheAllocationHint, 61
-=, 31, 41, 63	CachingEnabledMemory, 144
<, 28, 31	CachingInhibitedMemory, 144
<=, 28, 31	Call, 68, 69
≡ (unchanged), vii	Clear, 53, 63
==, 15, 28, 31, 52, 61	clock, 28
>, 28, 31	reading, 29
>=, 28, 31	Clr_CopFlag, 17, 73
\sim (undefined), vii	CompleteAddressSpace, 41
	CompoundString, 60
σ_0 , see sigma0	convenience programming interface, vi
	ConventionalMemoryType, 9
AbortIpc_and_stop, 22	coprocessors, 73
AbortReceive_and_stop, 22	ctrlxfer
AbortSend_and_stop, 22	ia32, 109
Accept, 63	ia32-hvm, 114
Accepted, 63	powerpc-hvm, 151
acceptor, 62	protocol, 85
ActualSender, 17, 70	CtrlXferItem, 58
Address, 41	CtrlXferItemInit, 58
address space	CtrlXferItemsAcceptor, 62
creation/deletion, 45	J
initial, 89	DeassociateInterrupt, 25
AllocateNewCacheLines, 106, 131	debug registers, 111, 134
AllocateOnlyNewL1CacheLines, 106, 131	DedicatedMemoryType, 9
anylocalthread, 15	DefaultMemory, 77, 107, 132, 144
anythread, 15	DisablePreemption, 37
ApiFlags, 8	DisablePreemptionFaultException, 37
ApiVersion, 8	DoNotAllocateNewCacheLines, 106, 131
Append, 53, 63, 110	por to a successive of the control o
ArchitectureSpecificMemoryType, 9	EFI_MemdescSize, 172
AssociateInterrupt, 25	EFI_MemdescVersion, 172
Tissocial Circle Pipt, 25	EFI_Memmap, 172
BootInfo, 9	EFI_MemmapSize, 172
BootInfo_EFITables, 171	EFI_Systab, 172
BootInfo_Entries, 169	EnablePreemption, 37
BootInfo_FirstEntry, 169	EnablePreemptionFaultException, 37
BootInfo_Module, 171	endian, 3
BootInfo_Multiboot, 171	ErrInvalidParam, 36, 77
BootInfo_SimpleExec, 171	ErrInvalidScheduler, 25
BootInfo_Size, 169	ErrInvalidSpace, 25, 47
BootInfo_Valid, 169	ErrInvalidThread, 22, 25, 35
booting, 92–94	ErrKipArea, 47
amd64, 135	ErrNoMem, 25
ia32, 112	ErrNoPrivilege, 25, 35, 47, 75, 77
powerpc, 149	ErrorCode, 17, 22, 25, 35, 47, 69, 75, 77
ppc64, 166	ErrUtcbArea, 25, 47
BootLoaderSpecificMemoryType, 9	exception
BR, see buffer registers	handling, 72
buffer registers, 62	message
amd64, 123–124	amd64, 133
ia32, 97–98	ia32, 108
1402, 71 70	1432, 100

184 INDEX

nowarna 146	data atmiatura 2.6
powerpc, 146	data structure, 2–6
ppc64, 164	retrieving, 7–10
protocol, 84	KernelGenDate, 8
ExceptionHandler, 17, 72	KernelId, 8
ExchangeRegisters, 21	KernelInterface, 8
eXecutable, 41	KernelSupplier, 8
ExternalFreq, 10	KernelVersion, 8
	KernelVersionString, 9
Feature, 9	KipAreaSizeLog2, 9
Flush, 44	
Fpage, 41	Label, 52, 53
fpage, 40–41	LargeSpace, 105
mapping, 64	Lcall, 69
receiving, 62	Lipc, 68
unmapping, 40, 42–44	lipc, 64
FpageLog2, 41	Load, 53
FullyAccessible, 41	LoadBR, 11, 63
Tunyaccessione, 41	LoadBRs, 11, 63
generic binary interface, vi	
•	LoadMR, 11, 54
generic bootinfo, 167–172	LoadMRs, 11, 54
data structure, 167–168	local ipc, 64
generic record, 168–169	local thread ID, 14
generic programming interface, vi	LocalId, 15, 21
Get, 53, 54	LocalMemory, 144
GetStatus, 44	logical interface, vi
global thread ID, 14	<i>Low</i> , 9
GlobalId, 15, 21	LreplyWait, 69
GlobalMemory, 144	
GrantItem, 57	MapGrantItems, 62, 63
GuardedMemory, 144	MapItem, 55, 56
	MBI_Address, 172
High, 9	memory descriptor, 6, 93–94
$m_{S}n, j$	MemoryControl, 77
include files, viii	
	MemoryDesc, 9
IntendedReceiver, 17, 69	message registers, 50–51
InternalFreq, 10	amd64, 122–123
interrupt	ia32, 97
association, 23	powerpc, 138–139
thread ID, 14	ppc64, 156–157
IO fpage, 103, 130	messages
IoFpage, 103, 130	generating, 50–54
IoFpageLog2, 103, 130	model specific registers, 111, 134
IoFpagePort, 103	Module_Cmdline, 171
IoFpageSize, 103	Module_Size, 171
IoFpageSizeLog2, 103	Module_Start, 171
IPC, 64–70	MR, see message registers
aborting, 19	MsgTag, 52, 53
cross cpu, 67	MyGlobalId, 15, 17
propagation, 65	MyLocalId, 15, 17
<i>Ipc</i> , 68	Myself, 15, 17
IpcFailed, 69	Wyseif, 15, 17
IpcPropagated, 69	Navar 20
	Never, 30
IpcRedirected, 69	Next, 169
IpcSucceeded, 69	Nilpage, 41
IpcXcpu, 69	Niltag, 52
IsGlobalId, 15	nilthread, 15
IsIoFpage, 103	NoAccess, 41
IsLocalId, 15	NumMemoryDescriptors, 8
IsNilFpage, 41	NumProcessors, 8
IsNilThread, 15	
IsVirtual, 9	page
	access rights, 4, 40, 55, 57, 82, 90
kernel features, 5	changing, 42, 55, 57
ia32, 102	inspecting, 43
kernel interface page	attributes, 90
location, 45	amd64, 132
kernel interface page, 2–10	ia32, 107
Kerner interface page, 2–10	10.52, 10.7

INDEX 185

powerpc, 144	SimpleExec_Flags, 172
ppc64, 163	SimpleExec_InitialIP, 172
size, 3	SimpleExec_Label, 172
pagefault	SimpleExec_Set_Flags, 172
protocol, 82	1
	SimpleExec_Set_Label, 172
Pager, 17, 22	SimpleExec_TextPstart, 171
pager, 82	SimpleExec_TextSize, 171
changing, 17, 22, 24	SimpleExec_TextVstart, 171
PageRights, 8	Size, 41
PageSizeMask, 8	SizeLog2, 41
preemption, 34, 37	Sleep, 69
protocol, 83	small spaces, 104
*	
PreemptionPending, 37	SmallSpace, 105
privileged threads, vii	SndBase, 56, 57
ProcDesc, 9	SndFpage, 56, 57
processor-specific binary interface, vii	SpaceControl, 47
ProcessorControl, 75	SpeculativeMemory, 144
ProcessorNo, 16	Start, 22
ProcessorNo, 17	•
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Stop, 22
propagation, 65	Store, 53
Put, 53, 54	StoreBR, 11, 63
	StoreBRs, 11, 63
RcvWindow, 63	StoreMR, 11, 54
RDMSR, 111, 134	StoreMRs, 11, 54
Readable, 40	
ReadeXecOnly, 41	StringItem, 60
•	StringItems, 63
ReadPrecision, 9	StringItemsAcceptor, 62
Receive, 69	strings, 59–61
redirection, 46, 65	receiving, 62
Reply, 69	Substring, 60
ReplyWait, 69	9.
ReservedMemoryType, 9	Substrings, 60
Rights, 41	system thread, 14
$\alpha igms$, $\pm i$	system thread, 69
G 771 1 15	system-call links, 5
SameThreads, 15	amd64, 125
Schedule, 35	ia32, 99
SchedulePrecision, 9	•
segments, 111, 134	powerpc, 140–143
Send, 69	ppc64, 158
send base, 55	SystemBase, 4
	SystemClock, 29
sensitive prio, 34	•
Set_CopFlag, 17, 73	TCD
Set_ExceptionHandler, 17, 72	TCR, see thread control registers
Set_Label, 53	thread
Set_MsgTag, 52, 53	creation, 23
Set_PageAttribute, 77	halting, 19
Set_Pager, 17, 22	ID, 14
9	id, 15, see thread ID
Set_PagesAttributes, 77	migration, 34
Set_PreemptionDelay, 35	
Set_Priority, 35	priority, 33
Set_ProcessorNo, 35	privileged, vii
Set_Propagation, 70	startup protocol, 80
Set_Rights, 41	state, 22, 34
Set_Timeslice, 35	version, 14, 23
	thread control registers, 16–17
Set_UserDefinedHandle, 17, 21	
Set_VirtualSender, 17, 70	amd64, 122
Set_XferTimeouts, 17	ia32, 96
SharedMemoryType, 9	powerpc, 138
sigma0, 89	ppc64, 156
protocol, 89–91	thread ID, 14–15
	retrieving, 17, 21
SimpleExec_BssPstart, 171	
SimpleExec_BssSize, 172	ThreadControl, 25
SimpleExec_BssVstart, 171	ThreadIdBits, 8
SimpleExec_Cmdline, 172	ThreadIdSystemBase, 8
SimpleExec_DataPstart, 171	ThreadIdUserBase, 9
SimpleExec_DataSize, 171	ThreadNo, 15
SimpleExec_DataVstart, 171	ThreadSwitch, 32
SumpreExec Data v Start, 1/1	i meaaswiich, 32

186 INDEX

ThreadWasHalted, 22 ThreadWasIpcing, 22 ThreadWasReceiving, 22 ThreadWasSending, 22 time, 30-31 time quantum, 33 Timeouts, 70 TimePeriod, 30 TimePoint, 31 Timeslice, 35 timeslice, 33 donation, 32 *Type*, 9, 169 TypedWords, 52 $Uncache able Memory,\,107,\,132$ ${\it Undefined Memory Type}, 9$ Unmap, 43 UntypedWords, 52 UntypedWordsAcceptor, 62 upward compatibility, vii UseDefaultCacheLineAllocation, 60, 106, 131 UserBase, 4 UserDefinedHandle, 16, 20 $User Defined Handle,\,17,\,21$ using the API, viii UTCB location, 45 size, 4, 24, 45 UtcbAlignmentLog2, 9 UtcbAreaSizeLog2, 9 UtcbSize, 9 Version, 15 virtual registers, 11 Wait, 69 WaseXecuted, 44 WasReferenced, 44 WasWritten, 44 Word, vii Word16, vii Word32, vii Word64, vii Writable, 40 WriteBackMemory, 107, 132, 144 WriteCombiningMemory, 107, 132 WriteProtectedMemory, 107, 132 WriteThroughMemory, 107, 132, 144 WRMSR, 111, 134 XferTimeouts, 17 Yield, 32 ZeroTime, 30